As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠⚠📖 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 104

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠**DANGER**	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠**WARNING**	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠**WARNING**	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠**CAUTION**	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

System Updates Terms & Conditions*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

* Not available on all models

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application.
See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, Audio/information screen details, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 37

For Safe Driving P. 38 Seat Belts P. 43 Airbags P. 57

Instrument Panel P. 105

Indicators P. 106 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 125

Controls P. 175

Clock P. 176 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 180
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 219
Interior Convenience Items P. 262

Features P. 289

Audio System P. 290 Display Audio* P. 292
Refuel Recommend* P. 390

Driving P. 391

Before Driving P. 392 Towing a Trailer P. 396 Off-road Guidelines P. 397
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 538 Refueling P. 540

Maintenance P. 547

Before Performing Maintenance P. 548 Oil Monitor System* P. 551
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 588
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 605

Handling the Unexpected P. 619

Tools P. 620 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 622
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 658 Overheating P. 659
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 678

Information P. 685

Specifications P. 686 Identification Numbers P. 692

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 6

Safe Driving P. 37

Child Safety P. 69
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 103
Safety Labels P. 104

Instrument Panel P. 105

Controls P. 175

Tailgate P. 200
Security System P. 212
Windows P. 215
Mirrors P. 245
Seats P. 249
Climate Control System P. 280

Features P. 289

Audio Error Messages* P. 379
General Information on the Audio System* P. 380

Driving P. 391

When Driving P. 399
Honda SENSING* P. 433
Braking P. 519
Parking Your Vehicle P. 530
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 544
Turbo Engine Vehicle* P. 545

Maintenance P. 547

Maintenance Schedule P. 557
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 564
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 582
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 593
Battery P. 599
Remote Transmitter Care P. 603
Cleaning P. 609
Accessories and Modifications P. 616

Handling the Unexpected P. 619

Handling of the Jack P. 646
Engine Does Not Start P. 650
If the Battery Is Dead P. 655
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 662
Fuses P. 669
Emergency Towing P. 677

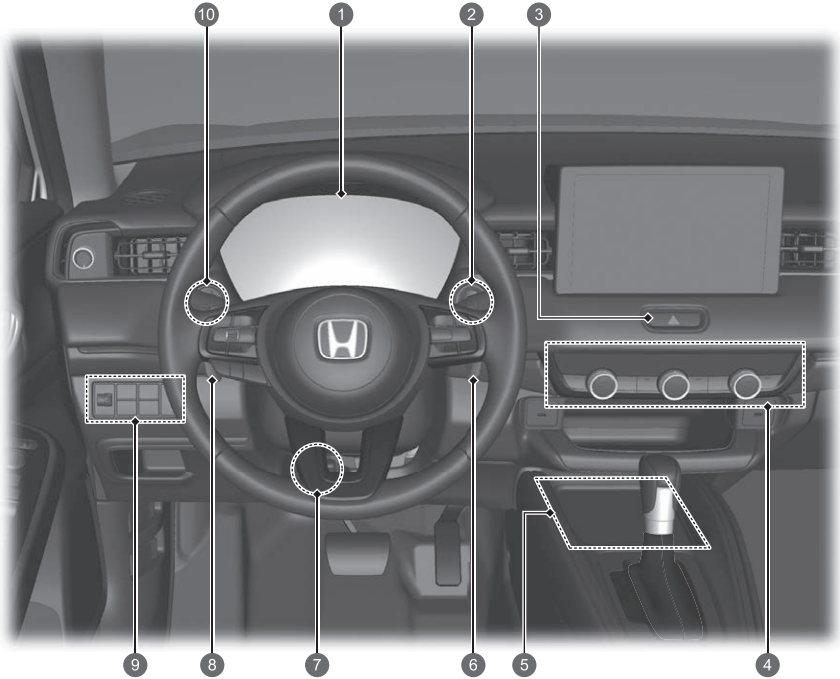
Information P. 685

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 694
Utility Compliance* P. 700
Open Source Licence* P. 701

Index P. 702

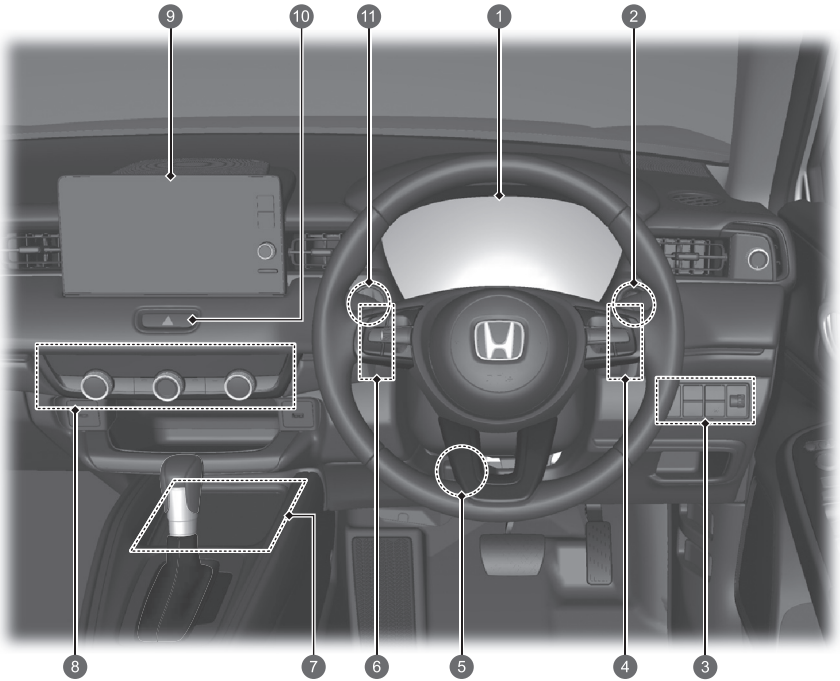
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



1. System Indicators P. 106
   Gauges P. 125
   Driver Information Interface P. 149
2. ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 219
3. Hazard Warning Button
4. Climate Control System P. 280
   Rear Demister P. 242
5. Wireless Charger* P. 274
6. Paddle Shifter (Shift up)* P. 411, 415
7. Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 244
8. Paddle Shifter (Shift down)* P. 411, 415
9. (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button P. 423
   Parking Sensor System Button* P. 533
   Headlight Adjuster* P. 231
   Power Tailgate Button* P. 207
10. Brightness Control P. 243

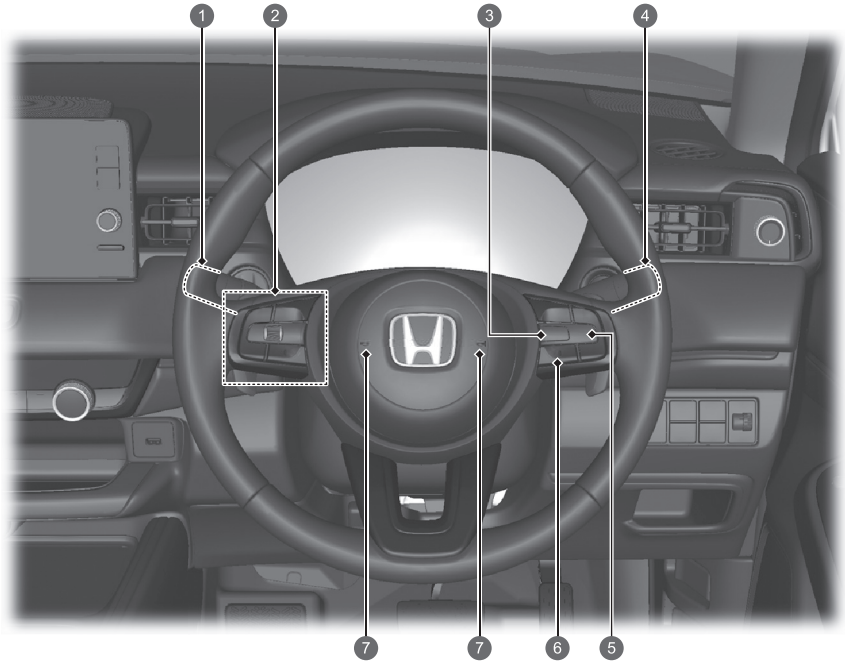
Right-hand Drive Type



1. **System Indicators** P. 106
   Gauges P. 125
   Driver Information Interface P. 128, 149
2. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 219
3. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 423
   Parking Sensor System Button* P. 533
   Headlight Adjuster* P. 231
   Power Tailgate Button* P. 207
4. **Paddle Shifter (Shift up)*** P. 411, 415
5. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 244
6. **Paddle Shifter (Shift down)*** P. 411, 415
7. **Wireless Charger*** P. 274
8. **Climate Control System** P. 280
   Rear Demister P. 242
9. **Audio System*** P. 290
   Navigation System*
   See the Navigation System Manual
10. **Hazard Warning Button**
11. **Brightness Control** P. 243

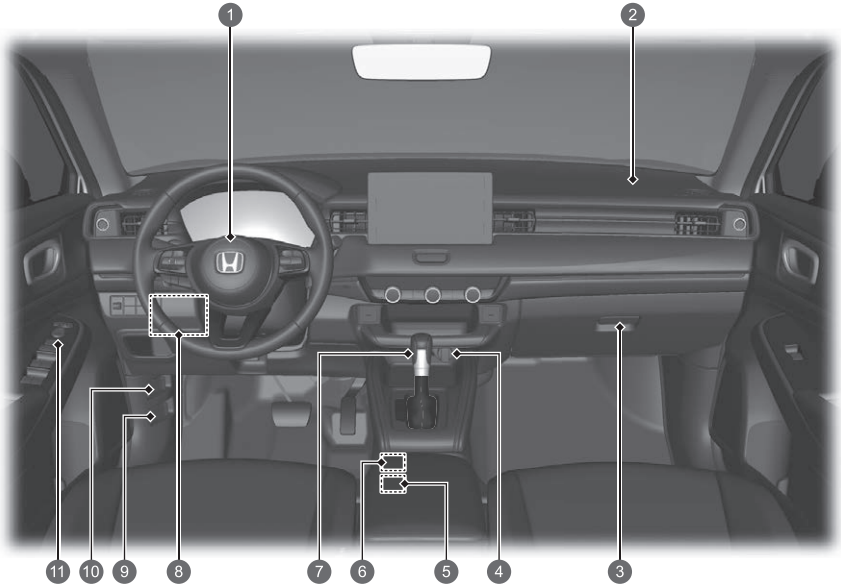
* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. **Headlights/Turn Signals*** P. 222, 224
   Front Fog Lights* P. 226
   Rear Fog Light* P. 226
   Wipers/Washers* P. 239
2. **Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons*** P. 360
   (Home) Button P. 129, 150, 296
   Left Selector Wheel P. 129, 150, 296
   Audio Remote Controls* P. 296
3. **Button*** P. 434
4. **Wipers/Washers*** P. 239
   Headlights/Turn Signals* P. 222, 224
   Front Fog Lights* P. 226
5. **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons*** P. 465
6. **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button*** P. 489
   Interval Button* P. 480
7. **Horn (Press an area around .)**

Left-hand Drive Type

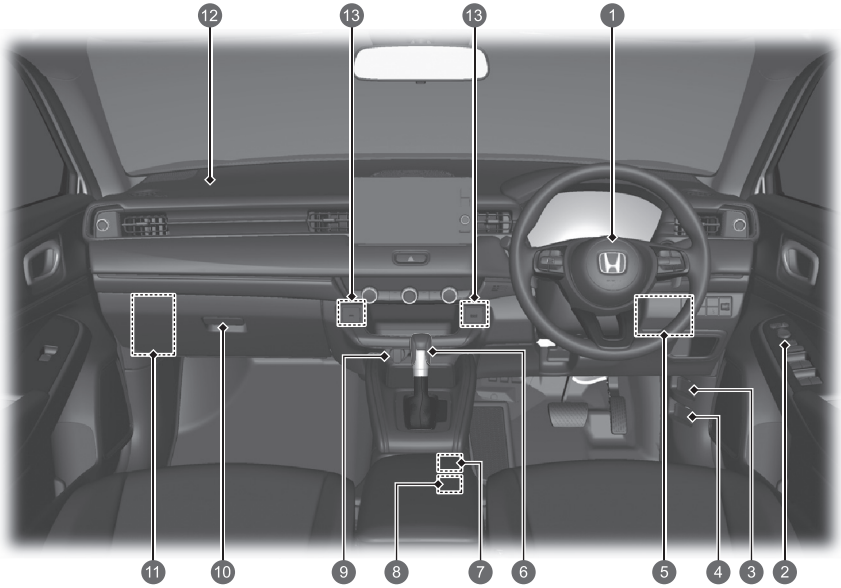


1. Driver's Front Airbag P. 59
2. Passenger's Front Airbag P. 59
3. Glove Box P. 265
4. Accessory Power Socket P. 273
5. Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 519
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 523
6. ECON Button P. 416
   Hill Descent Control Button P. 421
7. Shift Lever P. 408, 412
8. Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 671
9. Bonnet Release Handle P. 566
10. Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 542
11. Door Mirror Controls P. 246
    Master Door Lock Switch P. 197
    Power Window Switches P. 216

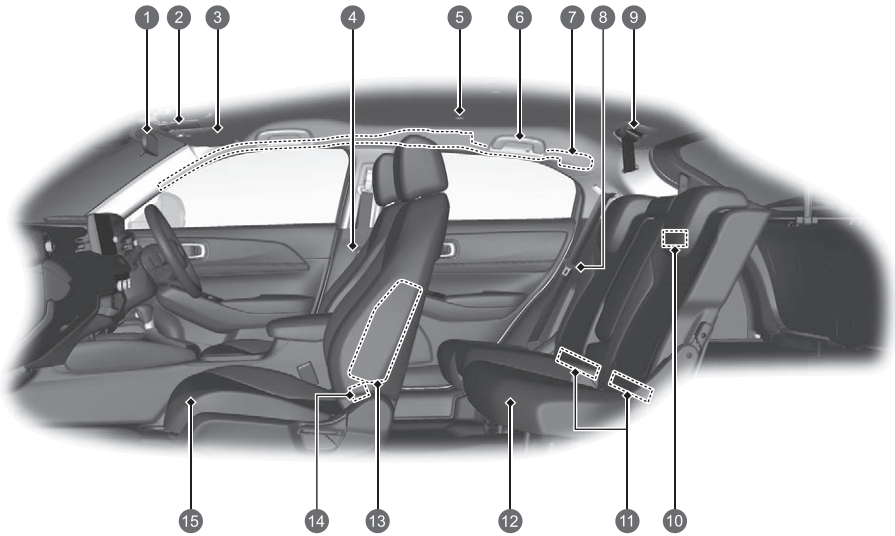
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



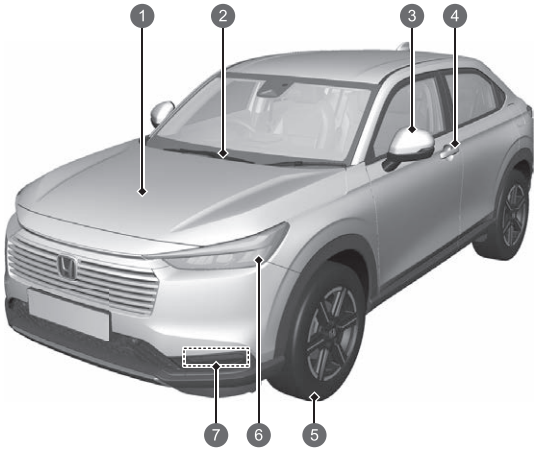
1. Driver's Front Airbag P. 59
2. Door Mirror Controls P. 246
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 197
   Power Window Switches P. 216
3. Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 542
4. Bonnet Release Handle P. 566
5. Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 671
6. Shift Lever P. 408, 412
7. Drive Mode Switch* P. 417
   ECON Button* P. 416
   Hill Descent Control Button P. 421
8. Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 519
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 523
9. Accessory Power Socket P. 273
10. Glove Box P. 265
11. Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 675
12. Passenger's Front Airbag P. 59
13. USB Ports* P. 295



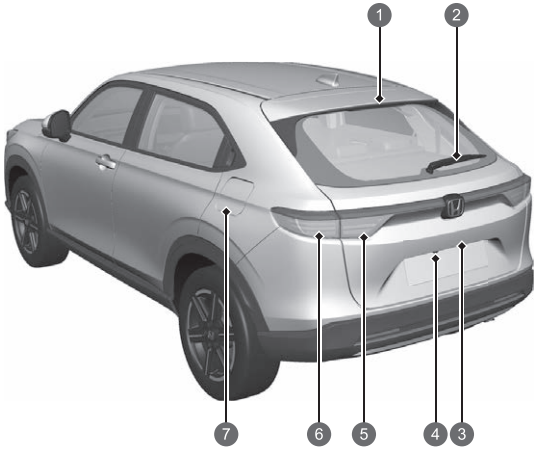
1. Rearview Mirror P. 245
2. Map Lights P. 263
3. Sun Visors P. 272
   Vanity Mirrors
4. Seat Belts P. 43
5. Map Lights P. 263
6. Grab Handle
   Coat Hooks P. 267
7. Side Curtain Airbags* P. 64
8. Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System) P. 96
   Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System P. 98
9. Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage* P. 52
10. Luggage Area Light P. 264
11. Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems P. 92
12. Rear Seat P. 253
13. Side Airbags P. 62
14. USB Ports* P. 291
15. Front Seat P. 249

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. **Maintenance Under the Bonnet** P. 564
2. **Windscreen Wipers** P. 239, 588
3. **Power Door Mirrors** P. 246
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 224, 582
4. **Door Lock/Unlock Control** P. 183
5. **Tyres** P. 593, 622
6. **Headlights** P. 222, 582
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 222, 228, 582
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 224, 582
7. **Front Fog Lights*** P. 226, 582



1. **High-Mount Brake Light** P. 586
2. **Rear Wiper** P. 241, 591
3. **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 200
   Tailgate Outer Handle P. 201
   Rear Licence Plate Light P. 222, 586
4. **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 538
5. **Taillights** P. 222, 585, 586
   Back-Up Lights P. 585, 586
   Rear Fog Light* P. 226, 585, 586
6. **Brake/Taillights** P. 222, 583, 586
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 224, 583, 586
7. **How to Refuel** P. 542

Safe Driving P. 37

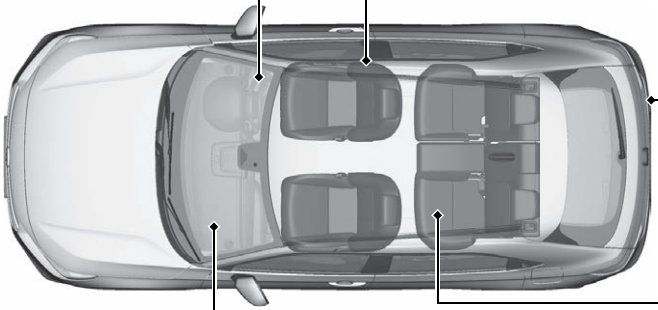
Before Driving Checklist P. 42

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts P. 43

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 103

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety P. 69

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

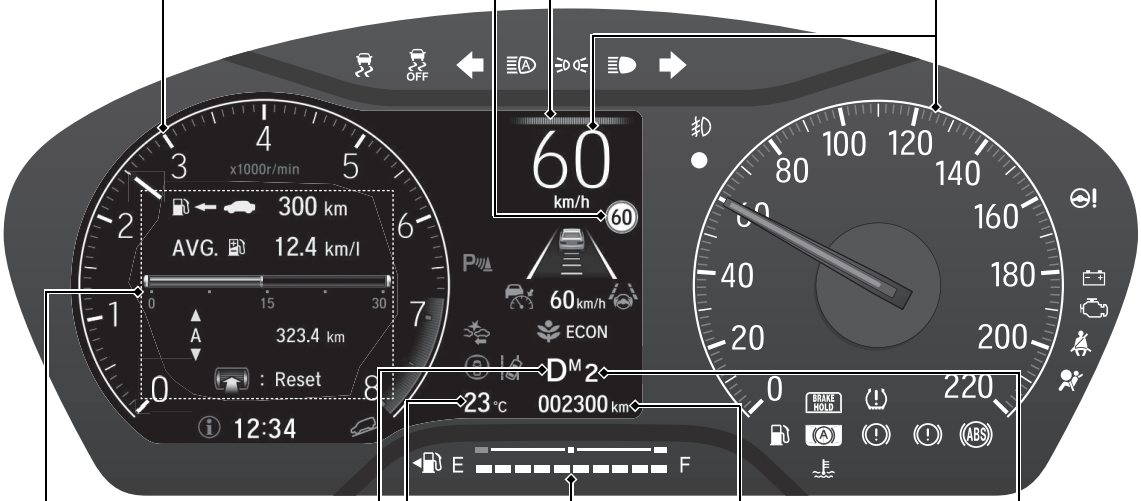
Airbags P. 57

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

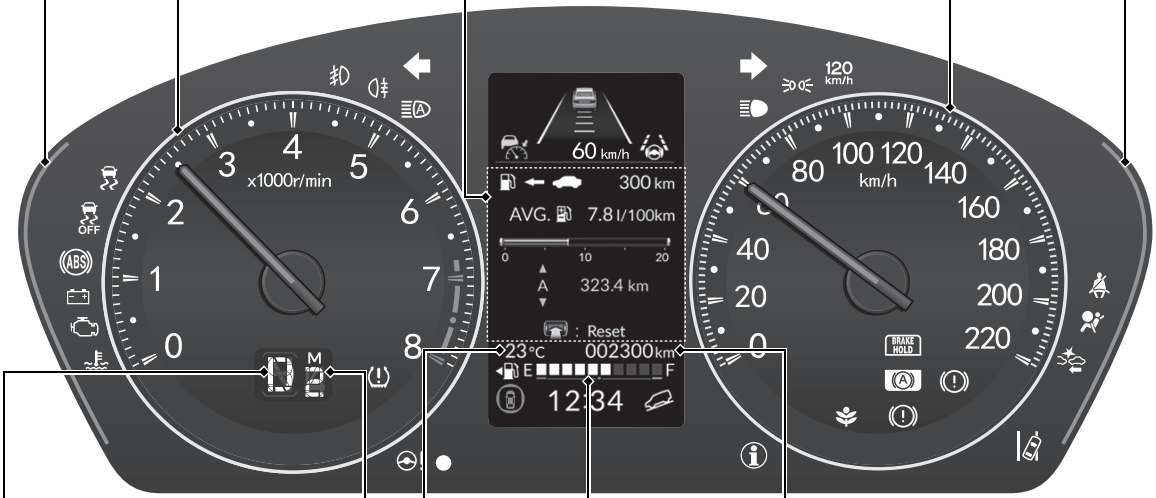
Instrument Panel P. 105

Indicators P. 106/Gauges P. 125/Driver Information Interface P. 128, 149

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



Ambient Meter P. 125

Tachometer P. 125

Driver Information Interface P. 149

Speedometer P. 125

Fuel Gauge P. 125

Shift Position Indicator P. 111 /
Transmission System Indicator P. 111

Outside Temperature P. 126

Odometer P. 126

M (7-speed manual shift mode)
Indicator/Shift Indicator* P. 111

* Not available on all models

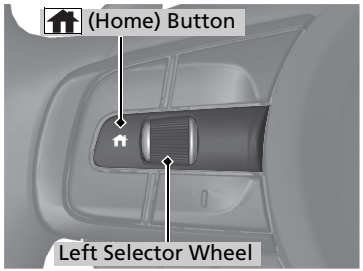
Controls P. 175

Clock P. 176

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.
P. 306

Except Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

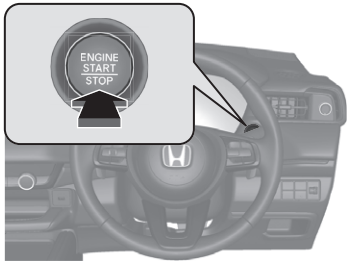


1. Press the (Home) button.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup***1/**Clock setup***2, then press the left selector wheel.
4. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Adjustment***1/**Adjust clock***2, then press the left selector wheel.
5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then press it.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then press it.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

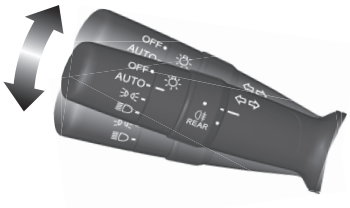
ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 219

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals P. 224

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 222

Light Control Switches

High Beam

Low Beam

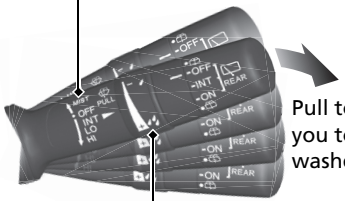
Flashing the high beams

Wipers and Washers

P. 239

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST
OFF
INT[*1]: Low speed with intermittent
AUTO[*2]: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe



Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring
[−]: Lower speed, fewer sweeps[*1]
[−]: Low sensitivity[*2]
[+]: Higher speed, more sweeps[*1]
[+]: High sensitivity[*2]

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

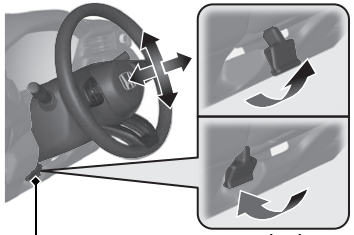
AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 244

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.

To adjust

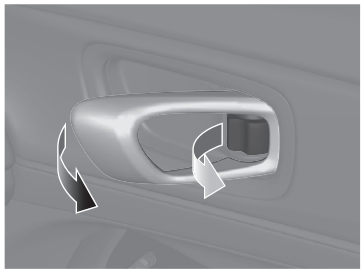


Lever

To lock

Unlocking the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door* from the Inside P. 196

- Pull the driver's door and front passenger's door* inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

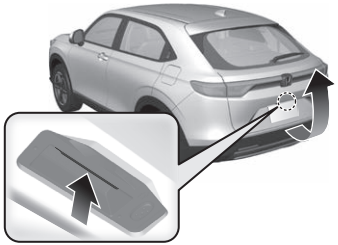


Tailgate P. 200

- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.

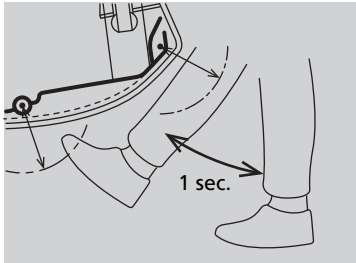
Models with power tailgate

- Press the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter.



Models with power tailgate

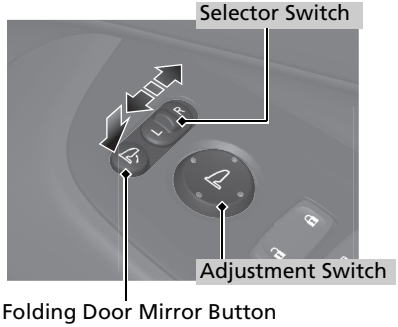
With the keyless remote on you, raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate.



Power Door Mirrors

P. 246

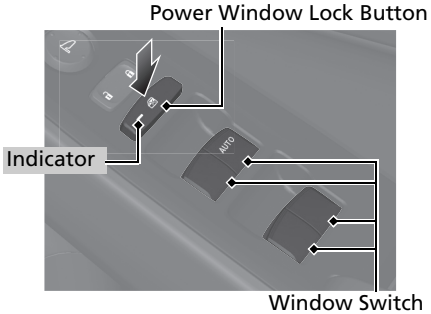
- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows

P. 215

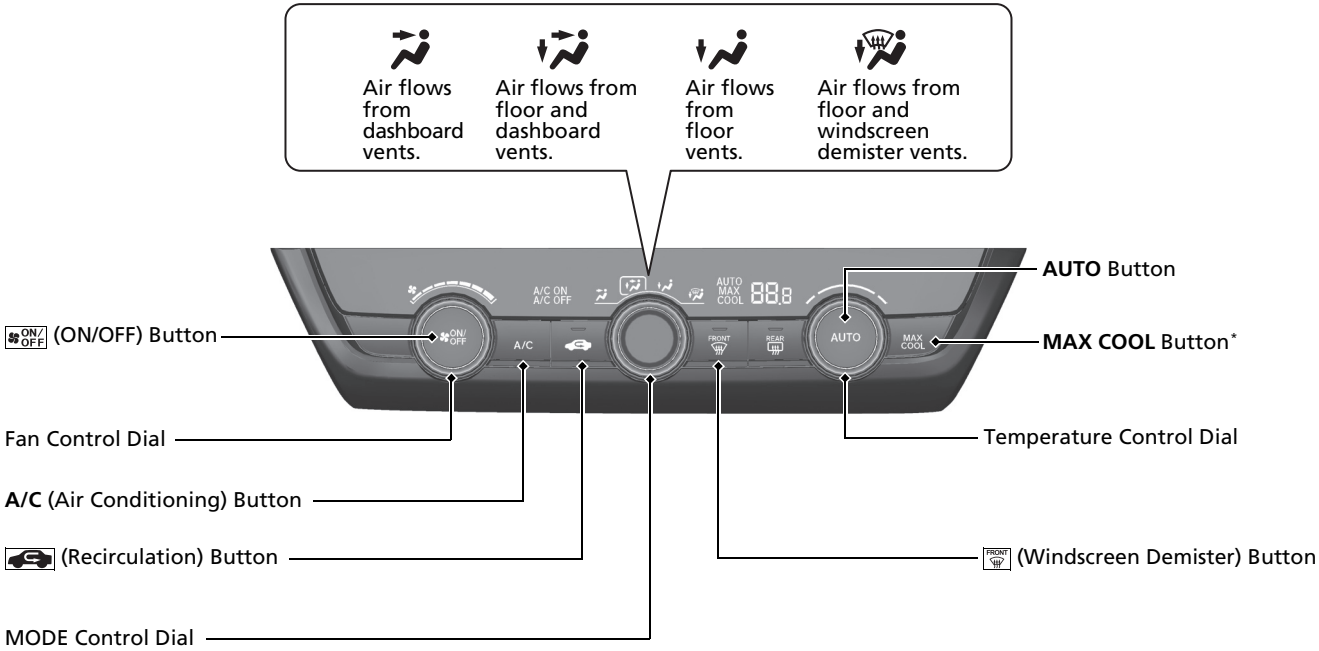
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

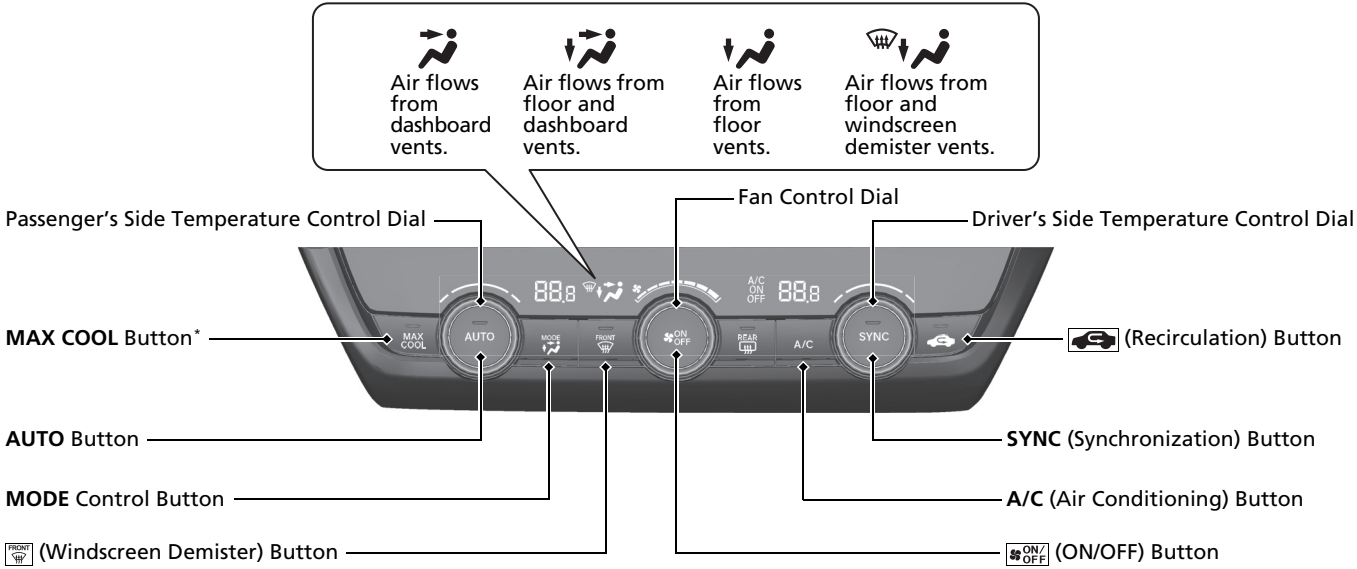


Climate Control System P. 280

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Models without SYNC button



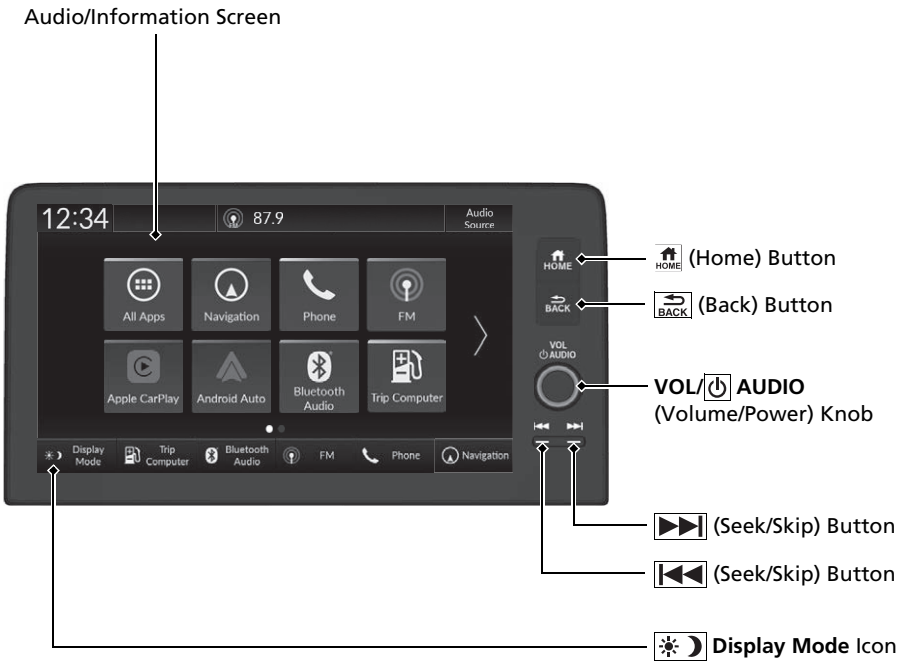


* Not available on all models

Features P. 289

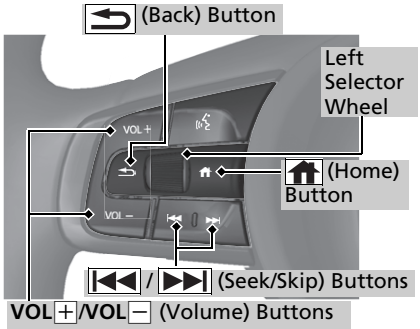
Audio System* P. 290, 292

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



Audio Remote Controls*

P. 296



- **VOL+/VOL–** (Volume) Buttons
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode
  Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  FM/AM/DAB*/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio

  Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

- ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio: Press ⏮ / ⏭ to change the preset radio station.
  iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:
  Press ⏮ / ⏭ to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  Radio: Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change the strong station.
  USB device:
  Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change a folder.
  iPod: Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change a song.

  Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

* Not available on all models

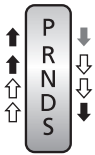
Driving P. 391

Continuously Variable Transmission P. 407, 408, 412

- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Models without drive mode switch

Shifting



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.

P — **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R — **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N — **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D — **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving.
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.*

S — **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration.
- To increase engine braking.
- When going up or down hills.
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.*

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* P. 410

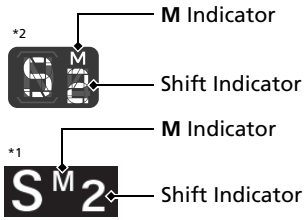
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

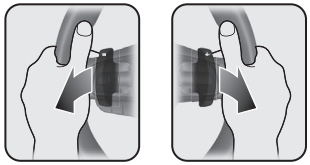
When the transmission is in S

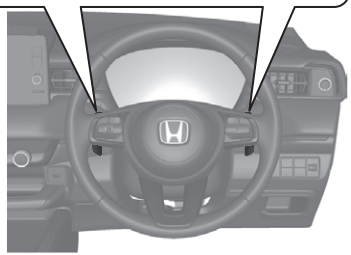
- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the transmission is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



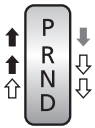




*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

Models with drive mode switch

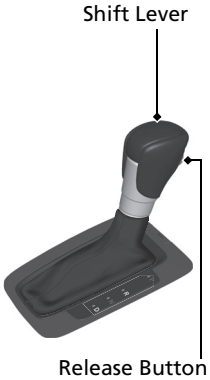
Shifting



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving.
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in SPORT mode).

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ➡P. 414

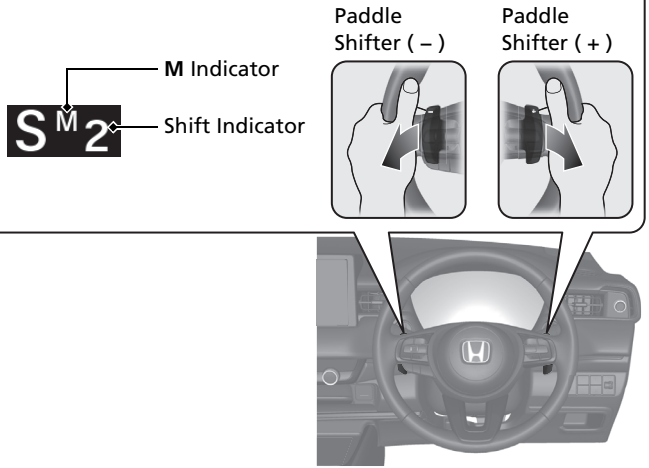
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

When the transmission is in D with SPORT mode

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the transmission is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



CMBS* On and Off P. 440

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P. 423

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Taiwanese models

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 425

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Except Taiwanese models

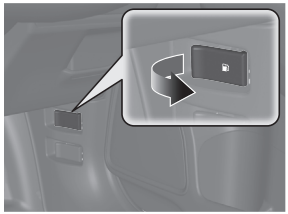
Deflation Warning System* P. 428

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration*/Initialisation* procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

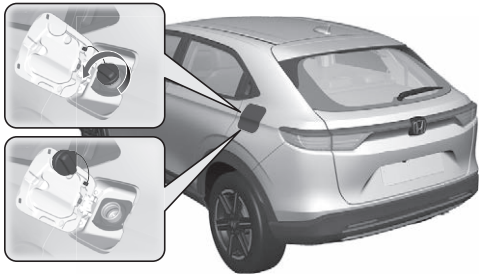
Refueling P. 540

Fuel recommendation:	Indonesian models **Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher** Taiwanese models **Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher** Pakistani models **EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher** Except Indonesian, Taiwanese, and Pakistani models **Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**
Fuel tank capacity:	**40 L**

1. Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



2. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
3. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
4. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda SENSING* P. 433

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 436

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Low Speed Braking Control* P. 450

Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers, this system can detect if there is danger of a potential collision with a wall or other obstacle during normal driving or when the accelerator pedal is depressed with too much force. The system then assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact through Low Speed Brake function and/or Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 456

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 465

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 485

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Australian and Fijian models

Traffic Jam Assist P. 497

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

*1 : Australian and Fijian models

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

P. 506

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 511

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

Auto High-Beam* P. 232

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

P. 235

When driving at night, the front wide view camera detects light sources such as street lights or the lights of an oncoming or preceding vehicle. The system automatically switches the headlights between low and high beam depending on the situation. In addition, the system automatically adjusts the light distribution of the high beams in order to reduce glare for preceding and oncoming vehicles.

Parking Sensor System*

P. 532

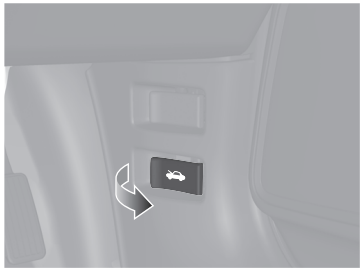
The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Maintenance P. 547

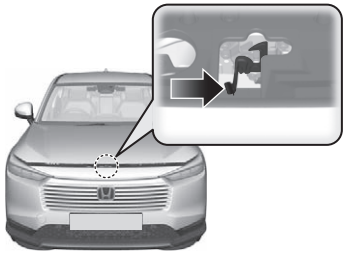
Under the Bonnet P. 564

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



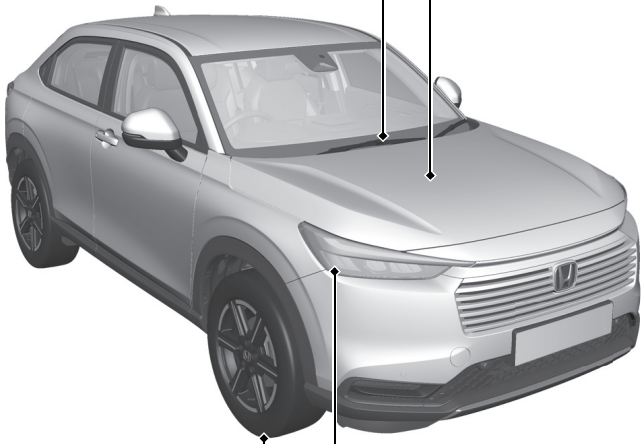
2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 588

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres P. 593

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 582

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected P. 619

Flat Tyre P. 622

Models with spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the luggage area.

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

Engine Won't Start P. 650

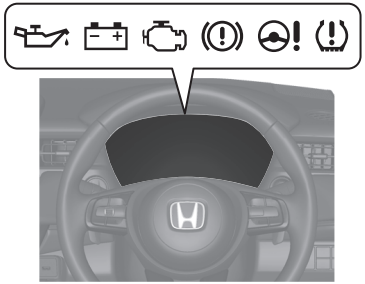
- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.

Overheating P. 659

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.

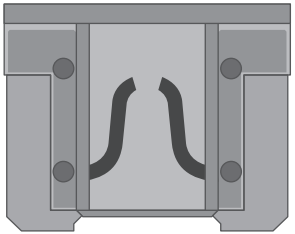
Indicators Come On P. 662

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse P. 669

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 677

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.

Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 527

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 187

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Models with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*/Deflation Warning System*

I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*/Deflation Warning System* needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➔ **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** ➔P. 425
➔ **Deflation Warning System*** ➔P. 428

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q Pakistani models

Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?

A Your vehicle is designed to operate on EURO V/5 unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions..... 38
- Important Handling Information..... 40
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 41
- Safety Checklist 42

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts..... 43
- Fastening a Seat Belt..... 49
- Seat Belt Inspection..... 55
- Anchorage Points..... 56

Airbags
- Airbag System Components..... 57
- Types of Airbags 59
- Front Airbags (SRS) 59
- Side Airbags..... 62
- Side Curtain Airbags* 64
- Airbag System Indicators..... 66
- Airbag Care 68

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 69
- Safety of Infants and Small Children... 73
- Safety of Larger Children 100

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas..... 103

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 104

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or rollover if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

Important Handling Information

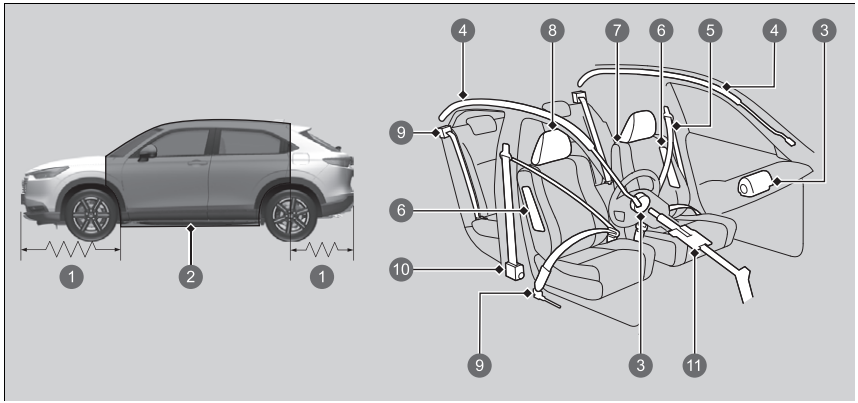
For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

➔ **Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle** P. 405
➔ **Off-road Guidelines** P. 397

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



❶ Crush Zones
❷ Safety Cage
❸ Front Airbags
❹ Side Curtain Airbags*
❺ Seat Belts
❻ Side Airbags
❼ Seats and Seat-Backs
❽ Head Restraints
❾ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners*
❿ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners
⓫ Collapsible Steering Column

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

* Not available on all models

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer* seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

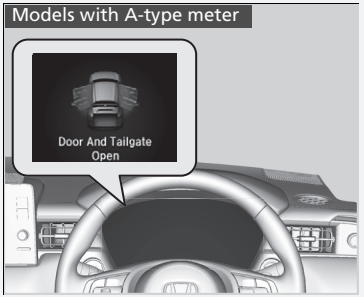
Safety Checklist

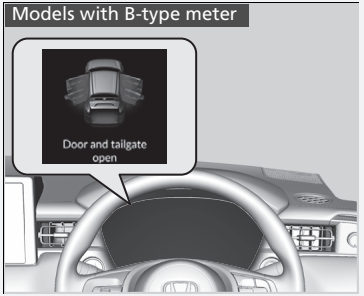
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➔ **Seats** P. 249
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 258
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 49
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➔ **Child Safety** P. 69

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.





About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four*1 or five*2 seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Child Safety** P. 69

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

*1: Australian and Fijian models
*2: Except Australian and Fijian models

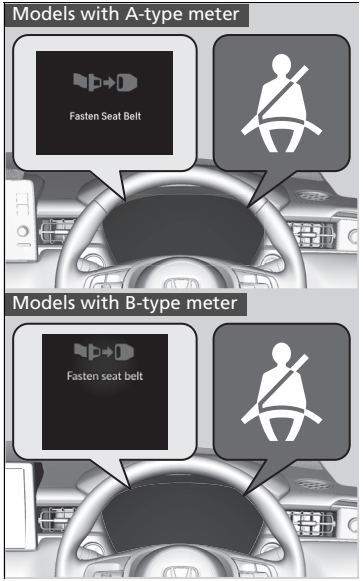
About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

Seat Belt Reminder



Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.
If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

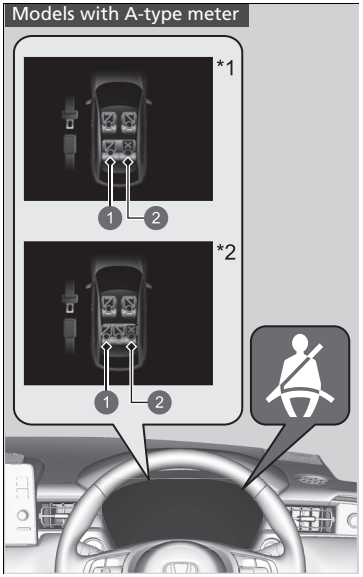
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ Rear seats

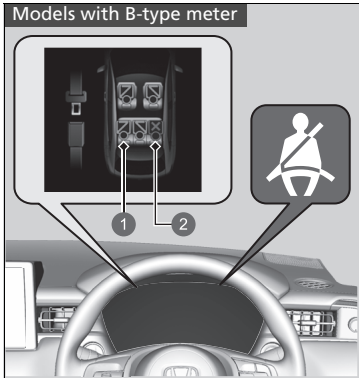
Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts has been unfastened while driving.

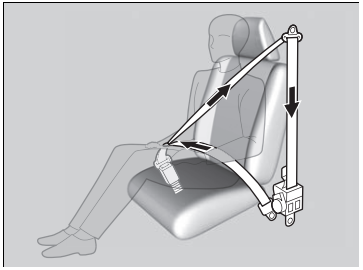
*1: Australian and Fijian models
*2: Except Australian and Fijian models

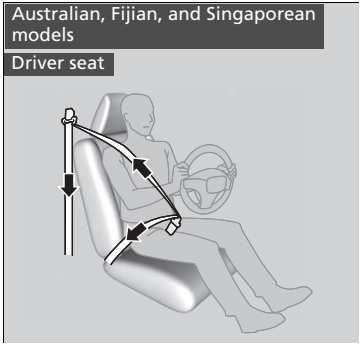


❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

Continued

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners





The front seats and the outer rear seats* are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts* during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

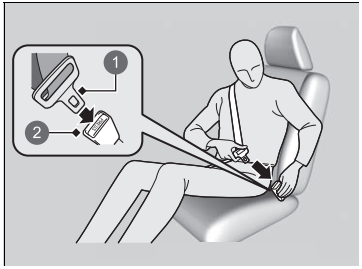
* Not available on all models

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

➡ **Seats** P. 249

1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

Fastening a Seat Belt

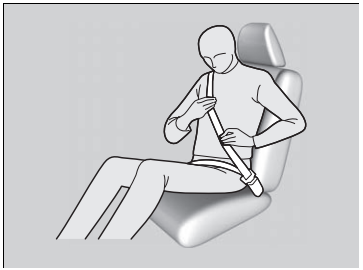
No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➡ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 43
➡ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 55

Continued



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.

1. Move the anchorage up and down while pulling the shoulder anchorage outward.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

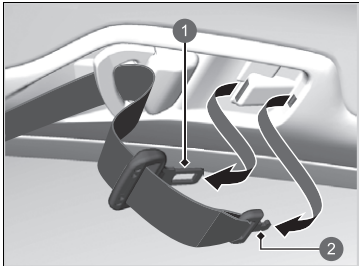
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

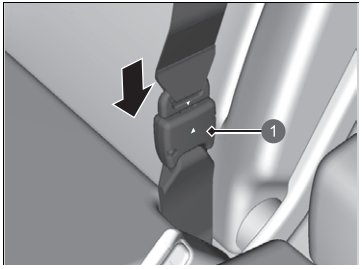
Continued

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Small Latch Plate

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



❶ Anchorage Buckle

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle.
Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.
Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

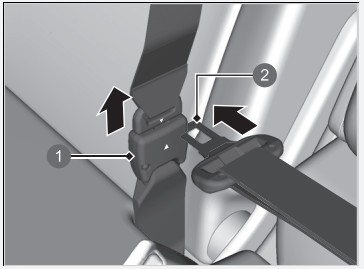
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*

⚠WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

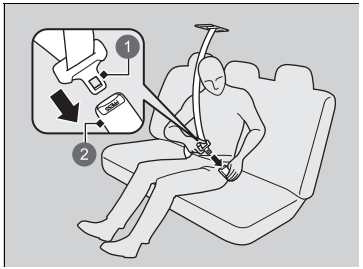
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



❶ Anchorage Buckle
❷ Latch Plate

* Not available on all models



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

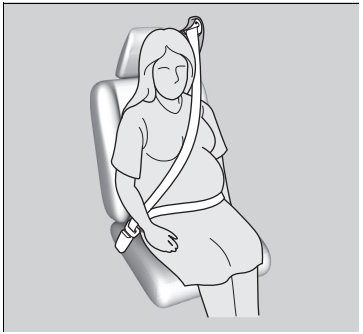
3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.
Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Continued

Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

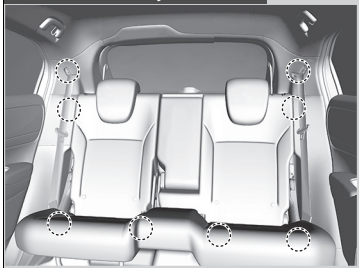
Anchorage Points

Front Seat

When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images.
The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

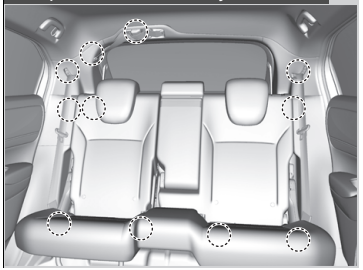
Rear Seat

Australian and Fijian models



The rear seat has two lap/shoulder belts.

Except Australian and Fijian models



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.

- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*.

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

- Safing Sensor

* Not available on all models

Continued

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with two or three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

* Not available on all models

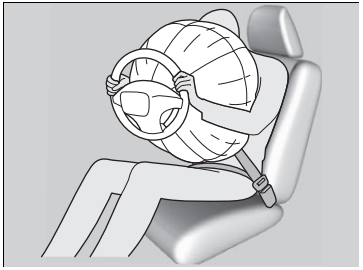
Continued

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

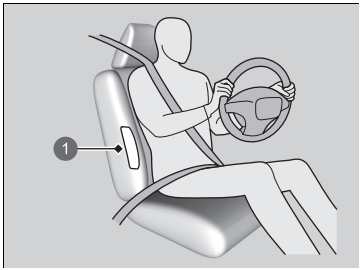
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



❶ Side Airbag Location

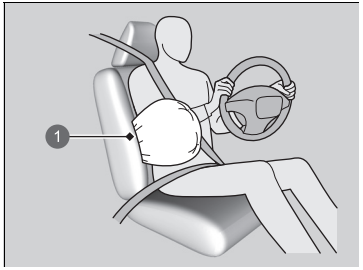
The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Operation



❶ Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Airbags

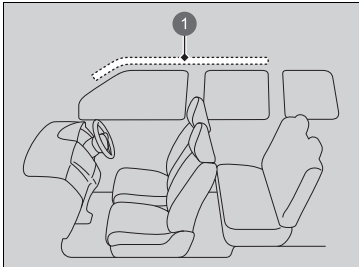
Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers*1 or passengers in outer seating positions*2 during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

1 Side Curtain Airbag Location

Side Curtain Airbags*

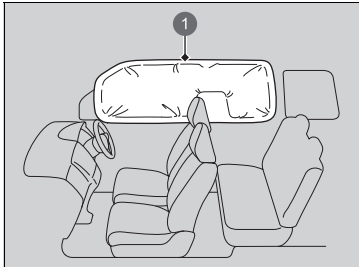
The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

*1: Australian and Fijian models
*2: Except Australian and Fijian models

* Not available on all models

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

❶ Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

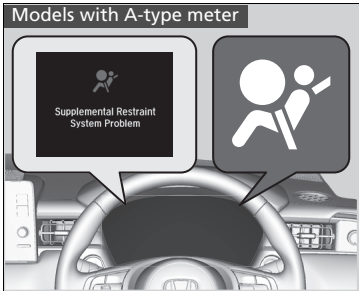
■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

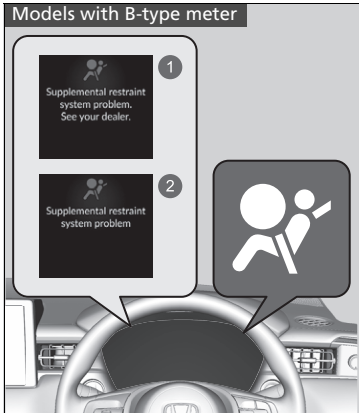
If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.



❶ Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
❷ Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

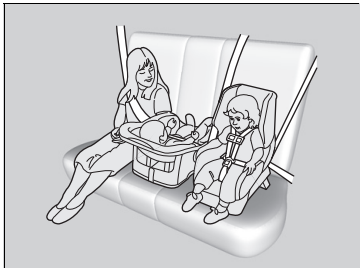
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

* Not available on all models

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

Except Taiwanese models

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Taiwanese models

Continued

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➡ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 75

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

Malaysian models

⚠WARNING

Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➔ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 215

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Continued

Protecting Child Passengers

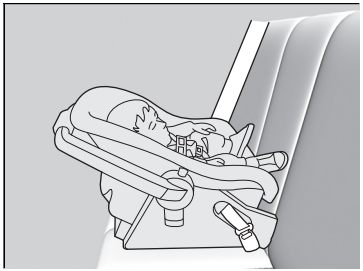
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 104

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Continued

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

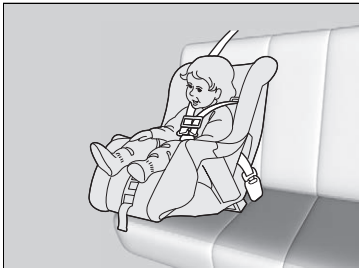
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Continued

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

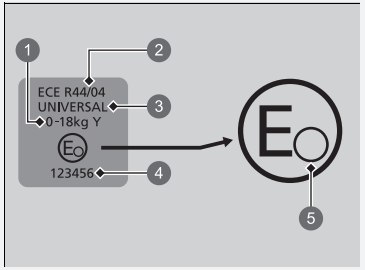
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

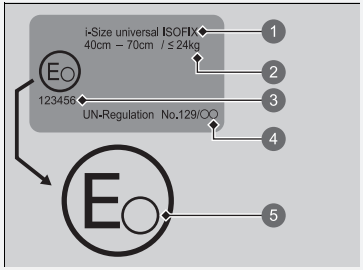
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



1. "Mass group"
2. Regulation number
3. Category
4. Approval number
5. Country code

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



1. Category
2. Size and weight indication
3. Approval number
4. Regulation number
5. Country code

Continued

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Australian and Fijian models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

Australian and Fijian models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3	
				Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	—		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3

Continued

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

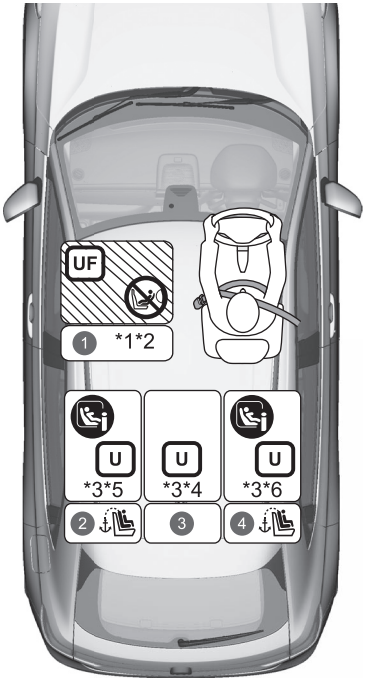
*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Bruneian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Indonesian, and Malaysian models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Continued

Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Bruneian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Indonesian, and Malaysian models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3		
				Left*5	Centre*4	Right*6
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*7	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

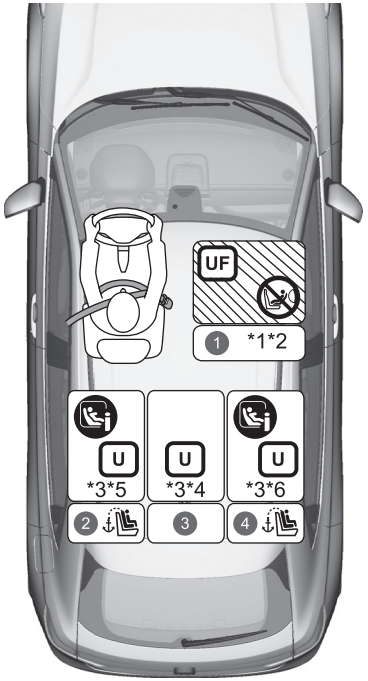
*7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Continued

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Latin American models with left-hand drive type, New Caledonia, Filipino, Vietnamese, Cambodian, and Laotian models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type, New Caledonia, Filipino, Vietnamese, Cambodian, and Laotian models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶ Front passenger*1	❷ 2nd row*3 Left*5	❸ 2nd row*3 Centre*4	❹ 2nd row*3 Right*6
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*7	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

Continued

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Latin American models

Latin Genuine CRS List

INMETRO466

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	Honda Baby & Kids	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Group I 9kg to 18kg	Honda Baby & Kids	Semi-universal ISOFIX
Group II, III 15kg to 36kg	—	—

Malaysian, Cambodian, Vietnamese, Filipino, Laotian, Bruneian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, and Indonesian models

Malaysian, Cambodia Genuine CRS List

UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

Continued

South African models

South africa Genuine CRS List

UN R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	STANDARD	Universal (Rearward facing)
Group I 9kg to 18kg	STANDARD	Universal (Forward facing)
Group II, III 15kg to 36kg	—	—

UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Taiwanese models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.
	Never use a child restraint system.

*1: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.
Child restraint systems with support legs cannot be installed on centre seat.

*2: Attaching a belt-mounted child restraint system to the rear outer seating position may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*3: Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear side, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

Continued

Taiwanese models

Detail information for CRS installation

			Seating position and Seat position number		
	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸
			2nd row		
			Left	Centre*1	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes*2
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes*2
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		Yes*3	No	Yes*3
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*4	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes*3	No	Yes*3
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	R3*3	No	R3*3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	F3*3	No	F3*3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3*2*3	B3	B3*2*3

*1: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.
Child restraint systems with support legs cannot be installed on centre seat.

*2: Attaching a belt-mounted child restraint system to the rear outer seating position may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*3: Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear side, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*4: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

Taiwanese models

Taiwan Genuine CRS List

CNS11497

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	Joie Arc360 (C1416)	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Group I 9kg to 18kg	Joie Arc360 (C1416)	Semi-universal ISOFIX
Group II, III 15kg to 36kg	Honda KIDFIX	Universal Semi-universal

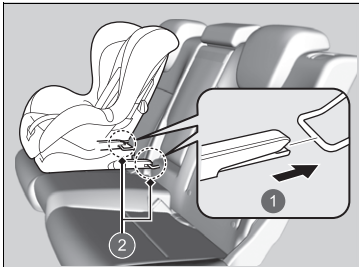
Continued

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).

1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

❶ Marks



2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
   ▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

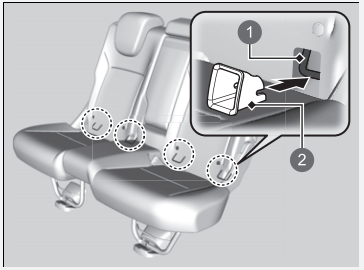
❶ Rigid Type
❷ Lower Anchorages

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

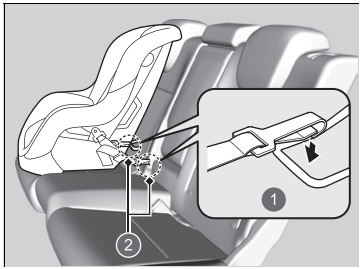
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

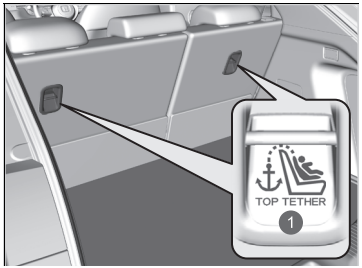
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



❶ Lower Anchorage
❷ Guide-cup



❶ Flexible Type
❷ Lower Anchorages



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

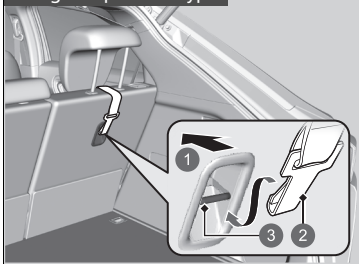
WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

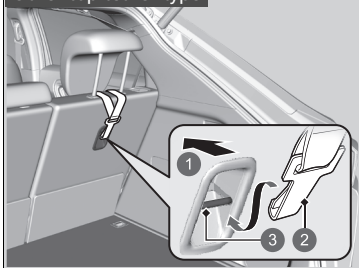
Continued

Straight top tether type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Other top tether type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Child restraint system with tether strap

3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
▶ Remove the luggage area cover*.
➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 270

4. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

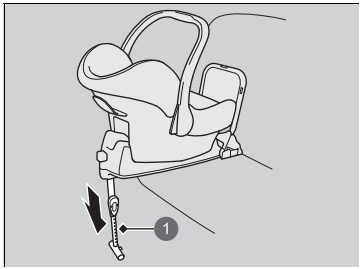
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

* Not available on all models



❶ Support Leg

Child restraint system with support leg

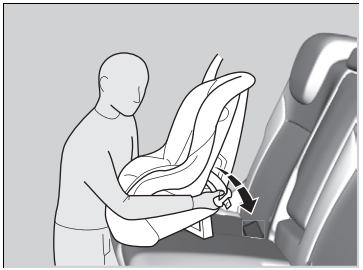
3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

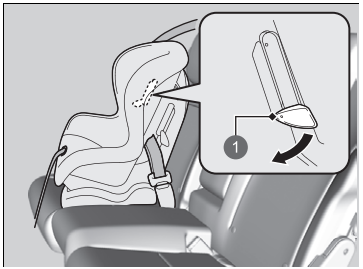
▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.

▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Continued

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



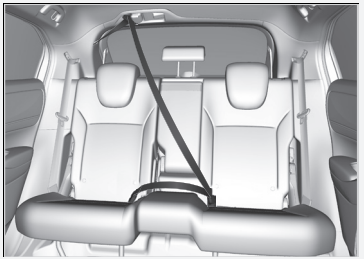


❶ Tab

1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

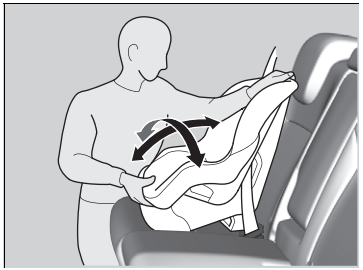
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

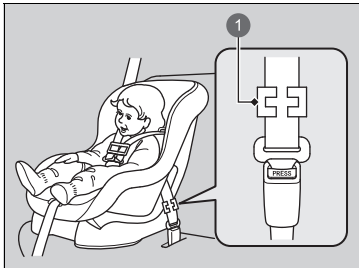


Except Australian and Fijian models

If a Child Restraint System is installed in one of the outer seats, it may cover the centre seat belt buckle or anchorage buckle.
Before installing a Child Restraint System, make sure the centre seat belt is fastened.
For additional information on fastening seat belts see
➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 49



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



❶ Locking Clip

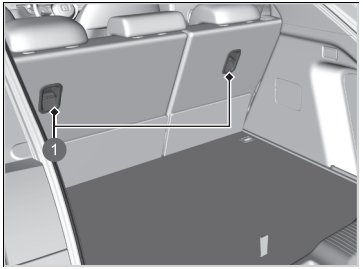
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

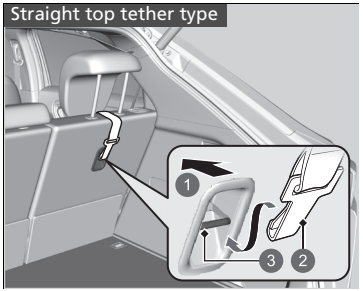
3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

Continued

Adding Security with a Tether



❶ Tether Anchorage Points



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

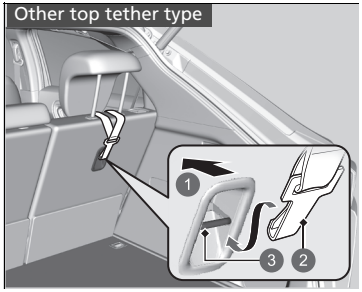
1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
   ▶ Remove the luggage area cover*.
   ➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 270
2. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
5. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
6. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

* Not available on all models



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

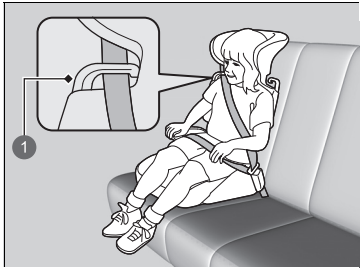
⚠WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly. There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the [ ] mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

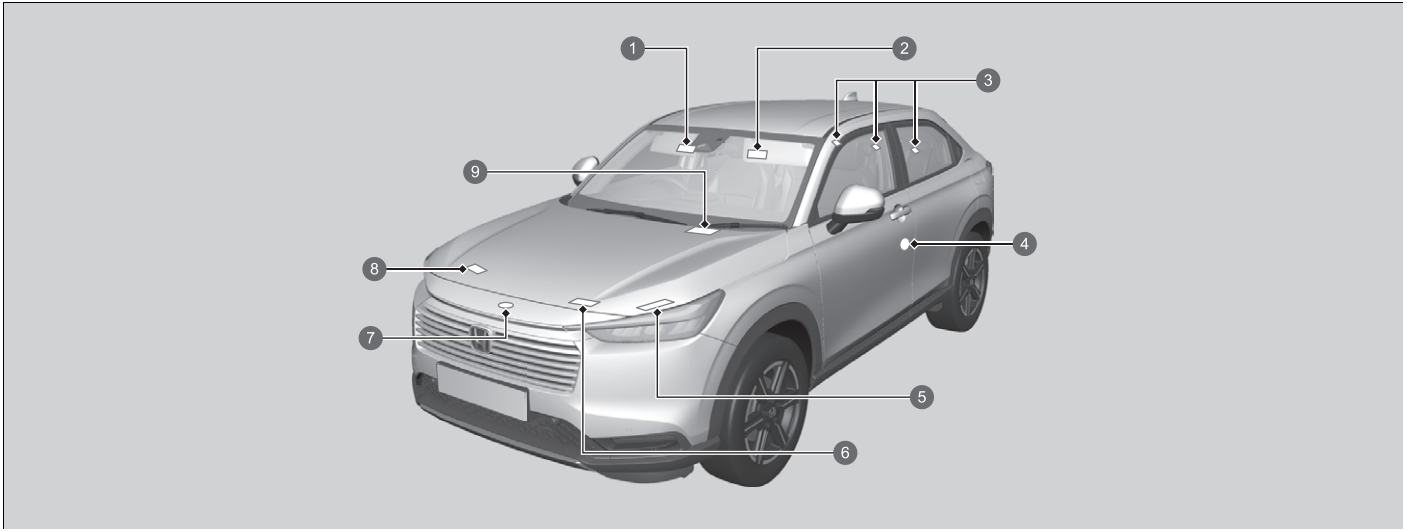
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 69
2. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 69
3. Rear Head Restraints* ➔ P. 259
4. Protecting Child Passenger* ➔ P. 71
5. Battery* ➔ P. 602
6. Front Bulkhead Cover* ➔ P. 567
7. Radiator Cap* ➔ P. 577
8. Air Conditioner* ➔ P. 605
9. Wireless Charger* ➔ P. 277

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 106
Gauges and Driver Information Interface
Gauges..... 125
Driver Information Interface (Models with A-type meter) 128
Driver Information Interface (Models with B-type meter)..... 149

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 108
*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 110
*1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 110
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 110
*1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 110
*1	Charging System Indicator	→ P. 111
*2 *3	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 111
*2 *3	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/ Shift Indicator*	→ P. 111
*2 *3	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 111
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 112
	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 112
*1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→ P. 112
*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 112
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 113
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	→ P. 113
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 113
*1	Speed Alarm Indicator*	→ P. 114
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 114
	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 114
	High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 114
*1	Auto High-Beam*/ Adaptive Driving Beam* Indicator*	→ P. 114
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 115
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	→ P. 115

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.
*2: Models with A-type meter
*3: Models with B-type meter

 * Not available on all models

*2 ECON *3	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 116
SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator*	→ P. 116
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator*	→ P. 116
*1	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*4	→ P. 117
	Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator*5	→ P. 116
	Low Temperature Indicator	→ P. 117
*1	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 117
	System Message Indicator	→ P. 118
	Parking Sensor Indicator*	→ P. 118
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 115
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 115
*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 119
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/ Green)*	→ P. 119
*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 119
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)*	→ P. 120
*1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 120
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	→ P. 120
*1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 121
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	→ P. 121
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	→ P. 122
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 122
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*	→ P. 124

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.
*2: Models without drive mode switch
*3: Models with drive mode switch
*4: Australian, Fijian, and Middle Eastern models
*5: Taiwanese models

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 664

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	Models with drive mode switch • **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 666 All models • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 664 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 666

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 523
Ⓐ	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 523
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 663

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ➔ **Checking the Battery** P. 599 ➔ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 662
*1 *2	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	➔ **Shifting** P. 408, 412
*1 *2	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	• Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.	Models without drive mode switch ➔ **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode*** P. 410 Models with drive mode switch ➔ **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 414
*1 *2	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. • Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45
	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left).	• Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 527
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system* - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system, or agile handling assist.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 422
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 423
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 665

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
120 km/h	Speed Alarm Indicator*	• Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds.	• This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h.
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➔ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 582, 583
		• Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➔ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 529
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➔ **Lights** P. 222
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. • Comes on when the adaptive driving beam* is active.	➔ **Adaptive Driving Beam*** P. 235
A	Auto High-Beam*/ Adaptive Driving Beam* Indicator*	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam*/adaptive driving beam* are met.	➔ **Auto High-Beam*** P. 232 ➔ **Adaptive Driving Beam*** P. 235

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	➔ **Fog Lights*** P. 226
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	➔ **Fog Lights*** P. 226
Indicator	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	➔ **Security System Alarm** P. 213

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
*1 ECON *2	ECON Mode Indicator	Models without drive mode switch • Comes on when the ECON mode is on. Models with drive mode switch • Comes on when you set the drive mode to **ECON**.	➔ **ECON Mode*** P. 416 ➔ **Drive Mode Switch*** P. 417
SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SPORT**.	• The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected. ➔ **Drive Mode Switch*** P. 417
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **NORMAL**.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch*** P. 417
	Taiwanese models Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 425
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1:Models without drive mode switch
*2:Models with drive mode switch

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Australian, Fijian, and Middle Eastern models Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been initialised.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be initialised. ➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration*/ Initialisation*** P. 429
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Low Temperature Indicator	• Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low.	• If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when the Hill Descent Control System is on and ready to use. • Lights up in green when the Hill Descent Control System is in operation.	➡ **Hill Descent Control System** P. 420

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	**Models with A-type meter** • While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select **Information** to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 128 **Models with B-type meter** • While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 149 **All models** • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed.
	Parking Sensor Indicator*	• Blinks if there are obstacles around the sensors.	➡ **Parking Sensor System*** P. 532

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)*	• Lights up in white when you press the button. • Lights up in green while the system is in operation.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 465
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)*	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485 **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 497
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
		Models with B-type meter • Comes on when the CMBS is off.	**Safety Support*** P. 155
	Models with A-type meter Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	**Safety Support** P. 138

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
		Models with B-type meter • Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456
		Models with B-type meter • Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➔ **Safety Support*** P. 155
	Models with A-type meter Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Models with A-type meter Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➡ **Safety Support** P. 138
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, or Low Speed Braking Control*.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and Low Speed Braking Control* are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
		Models with Low Speed Braking Control • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the sonar sensor.	• Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of the sonar sensor. ➡ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 450

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and Low Speed Braking Control* are on. • Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in grey when all systems above are off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456 ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 436 ➔ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 450

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Tachometer

Models with A-type meter

You can turn the tachometer display on or off.

Settings* P. 140
Customized Features P. 346

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E* or 0*.
Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Ambient Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner with the **SPORT** mode* off.

Models with drive mode switch

Changes to red to indicate that **SPORT** mode is selected.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

➔ **Settings*** P. 140
➔ **Settings** P. 157
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

* Not available on all models

Clock

Shows the clock.
You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 176
➔ **Clock Setup** P. 306

Models with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*.

➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 465
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485
➔ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 497

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.
If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the detected traffic sign is exceeded.

➔ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 511

* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface (Models with A-type meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** or **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message is displayed.

➡ **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low*1/Engine oil pressure low*2 Warning Appears** P. 662

➡ **Overheating** P. 659

■ Switching the Display

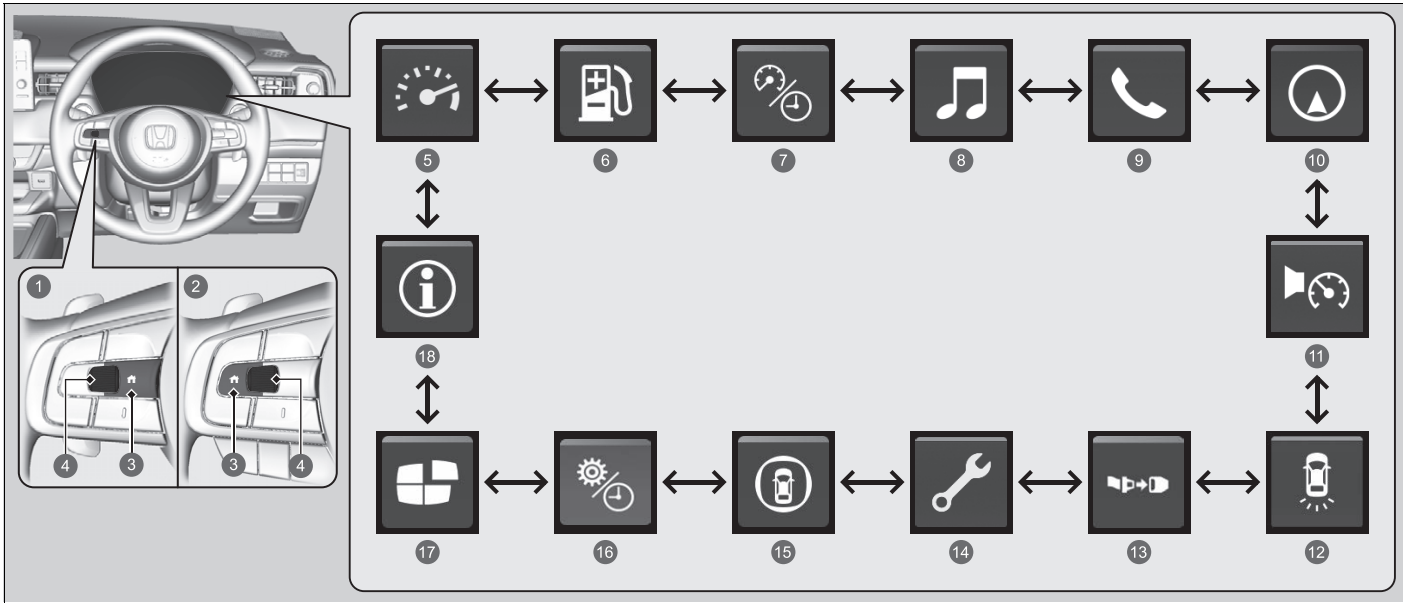
Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the (back) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.

➡ **Customize Display** P. 139



1. Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
2. Except Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
3. (Home) Button
4. Left Selector Wheel
5. **Tachometer** ➔ P. 125
6. **Range & Fuel** ➔ P. 131
7. **Speed & Time** ➔ P. 133
8. **Audio*** ➔ P. 134
9. **Phone*** ➔ P. 134
10. **Navigation*** ➔ P. 135
11. **Speed Alarm*** ➔ P. 136
12. **Brake Light Display** ➔ P. 137
13. **Seat Belts** ➔ P. 137
14. **Maintenance*** ➔ P. 137
15. **Safety Support** ➔ P. 138
16. **Settings*** ➔ P. 140
17. **Customize Display** ➔ P. 139
18. **Information** ➔ P. 139

* Not available on all models

Continued

Tachometer

Tachometer P. 125

Tachometer

The tachometer can be turned on and off using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

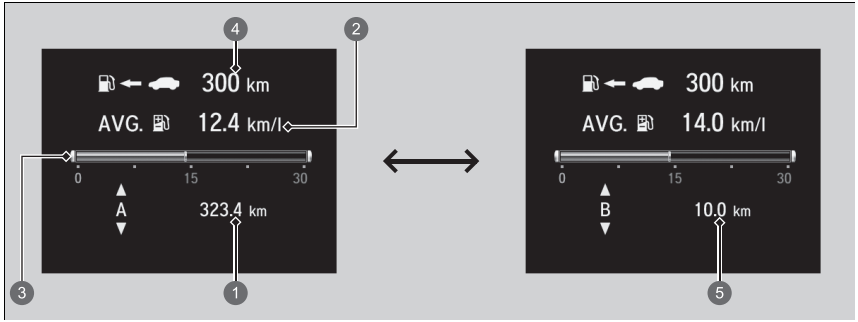
Settings* P. 140
Customized Features P. 346

Even if you have turned off the tachometer on the driver information interface or audio/information screen, if **Tachometer** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer-only display.

* Not available on all models

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Average Fuel Economy
3. Instant Fuel Economy
4. Range
5. Trip Meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100km* or km/l*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km* or km/l*.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Except Australian and Fijian models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

➔ **Settings*** P. 140
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➔ **Settings*** P. 140
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

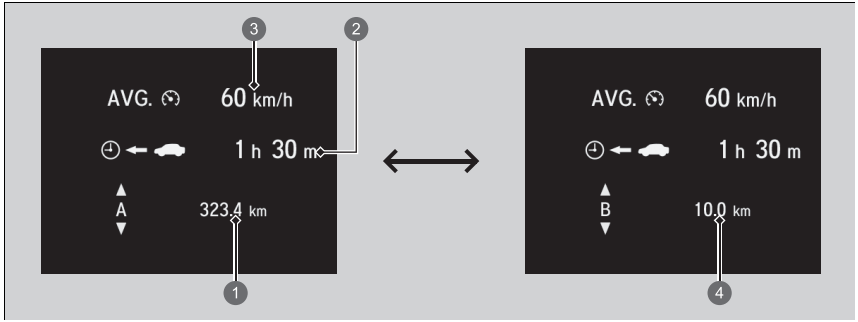
Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

* Not available on all models

Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip meter A
2. Elapsed Time
3. Average Speed
4. Trip meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

➔ **Trip meter** P. 132

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Audio*

Shows the current audio information.

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 293

■ Phone*

Shows the current phone information.

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 360

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➔ **Settings*** P. 140
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➔ **Settings*** P. 140
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

* Not available on all models

Navigation*

Compass

Shows the compass screen.

Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto, or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 335
➡ **Android Auto™** P. 342

Navigation*

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.
➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

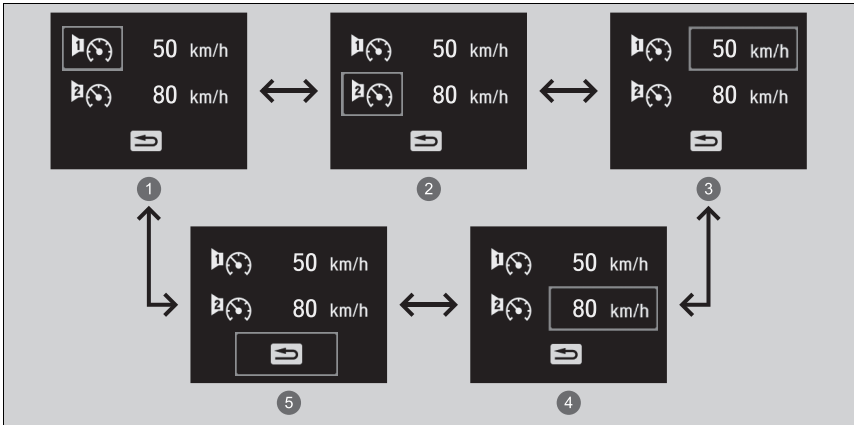
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting [50 km/h*1]
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting [80 km/h*1]
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Brake Light Display

Shows the current status of brake lights, headlights, etc.

Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45

Maintenance*

Shows the oil monitor system

➡ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 551

* Not available on all models

Continued

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and Low Speed Braking Control*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

1. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
2. Area Info for Low Speed Braking Control*
3. Area Info for CMBS
4. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
5. Low Speed Braking Control Icon and Status Info*
6. CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 436
- **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 450

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*** P. 124
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*** P. 120
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*** P. 120
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*** P. 121
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*** P. 122
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*** P. 121

Models with Low Speed Braking Control

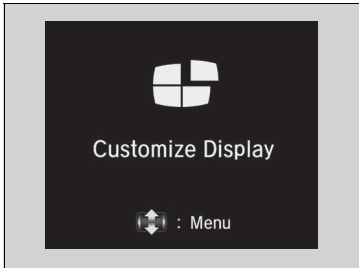
Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the parking sensor is turned off for the rear only, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

- **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 537

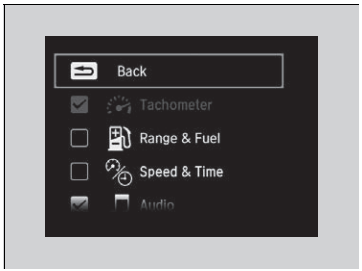
* Not available on all models

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize Display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Information

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

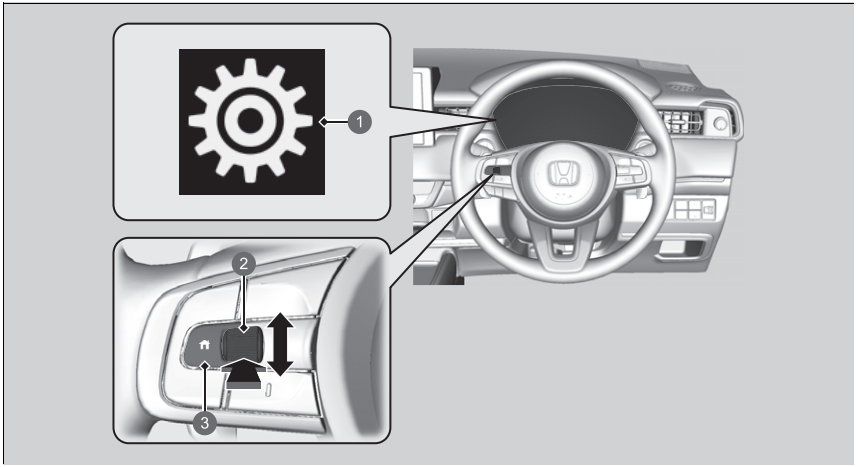
Continued

■ Settings*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the (home) button, then select the (**Settings**) screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in P. Then press the left selector wheel.



1. Driver Information Interface
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. (Home) Button

Settings*

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

➡ **List of customizable options** P. 141
➡ **Example of customization settings** P. 146

When you customize settings, shift to P.

* Not available on all models

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Setup	**Clock Adjustment**	Adjust the time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 176	—
	Clock Display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	**24h/12h**[*1]**/OFF**
Driver Assist System Setup	**Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	**Far/Normal**[*1]**/Near**
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Lead Car Departure Notification System	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Early/OFF**
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	**Early/Normal**[*1]**/Delayed/ Warning Only**
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C**
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset*1**
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset*1**
	Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**Max/Mid*1/Min**
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Fuel Economy Unit	Selects the fuel economy unit.	**km/l*1/l/100km**
	Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the instrument panel.	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	**Keyless Access Beep Volume**	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High***1/**Low**
	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Remote Start System ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON***1/**OFF**
Lighting Setup	**Auto High-Beam**	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec***1/**15sec**
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec***1/**0sec**
	Headlight Integration With Wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors and tailgate automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]/ **Shift From P/OFF**
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors and tailgate automatically unlock.	**Shift To P**[*1]**/IGN OFF/OFF**
	Walk Away Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Auto Folding Door Mirror[*]	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	**Auto Fold With Keyless**[*1]/ **Manual Only**
	Lock Presetting	Changes the settings for the lock presetting function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Power Tailgate Setup*	**Keyless Open Mode**	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime*1/When Unlocked**
	Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)*1/ OFF (Manual Only)**
	Hands Free Access	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON*1/OFF**
Maintenance Reset	—	Resets the oil monitor system information when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/Reset**
Default all	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	**Cancel/OK**

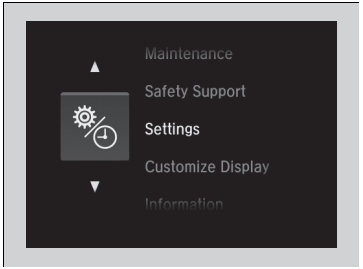
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

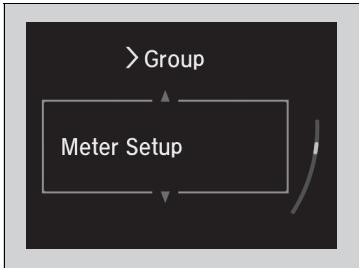
Continued

■ Example of customization settings

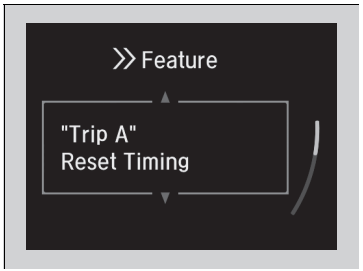
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.



1. Press the button and roll the left selector wheel to select (**Settings**), then press the left selector wheel.

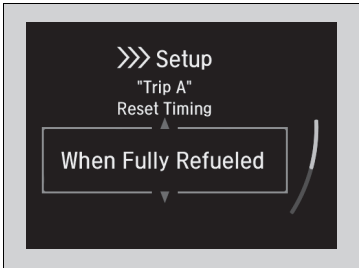


2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.

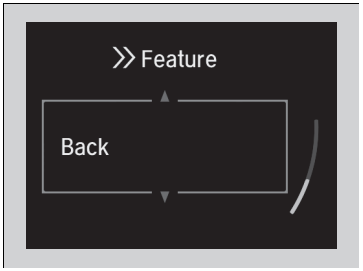


4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned OFF**, **Manual Reset**, or **Back**.

Continued



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display will return to the customization menu screen.



6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Driver Information Interface (Models with B-type meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.
When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low** or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.

➡ **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low*1/Engine oil pressure low*2 Warning Appears** P. 662
➡ **Overheating** P. 659

Switching the Display

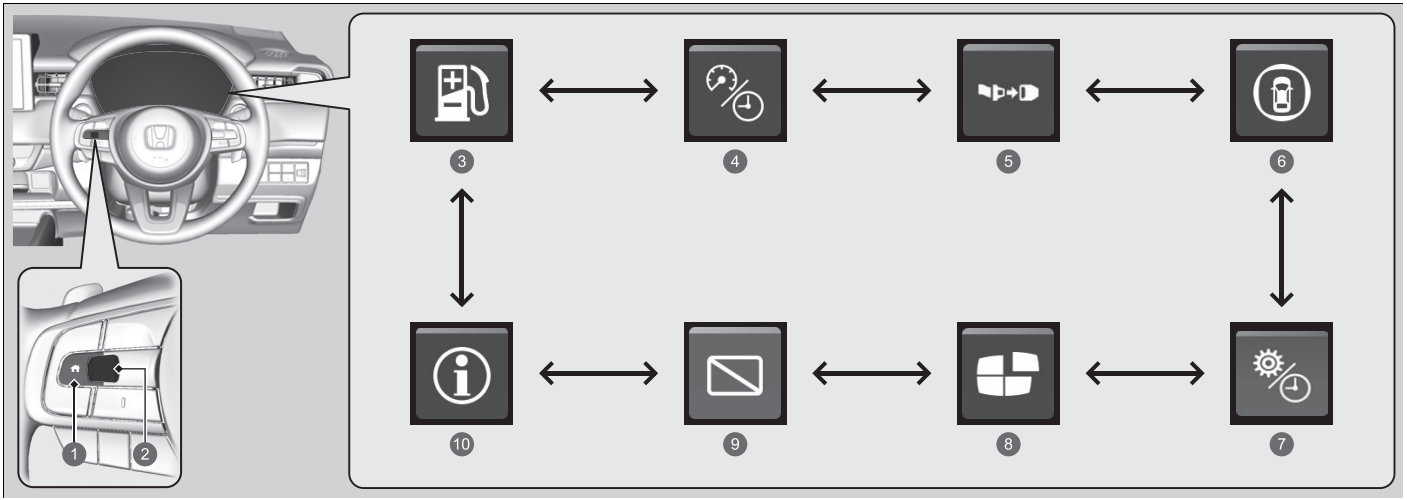
Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the (back) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.
➡ **Customize Display** P. 156

Continued

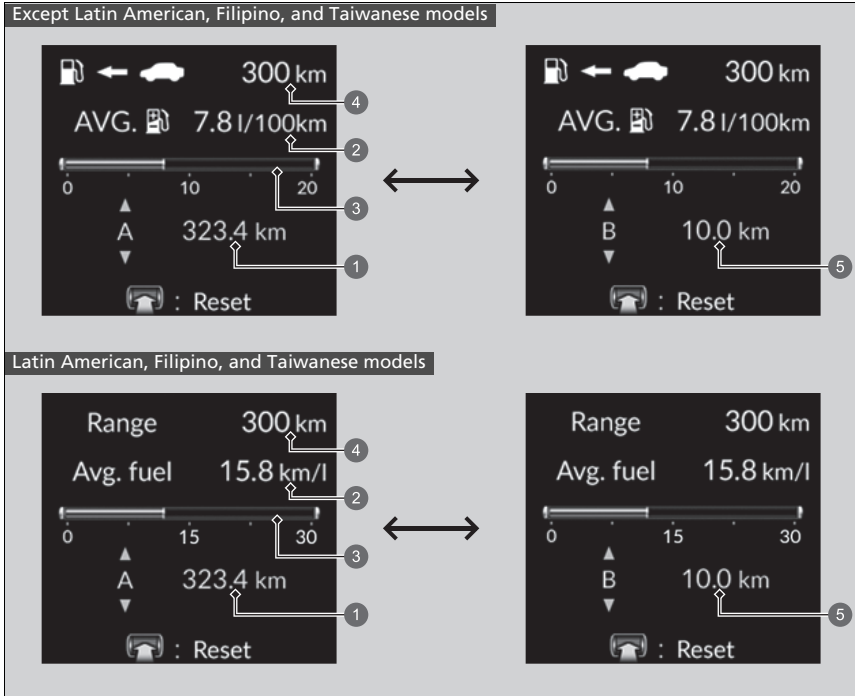


1. (Home) Button
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. Range & Fuel P. 151
4. Speed & Time P. 153
5. Seat Belts P. 154
6. Safety Support* P. 155
7. Settings P. 157
8. Customize Display P. 156
9. No Content
10. Warnings/Information P. 156

* Not available on all models

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Average Fuel Economy
3. Instant Fuel Economy
4. Range
5. Trip Meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100km* or km/l*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km* or km/l*.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Except Middle Eastern, African, and Latin American models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

➔ **Settings** P. 157

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➔ **Settings** P. 157

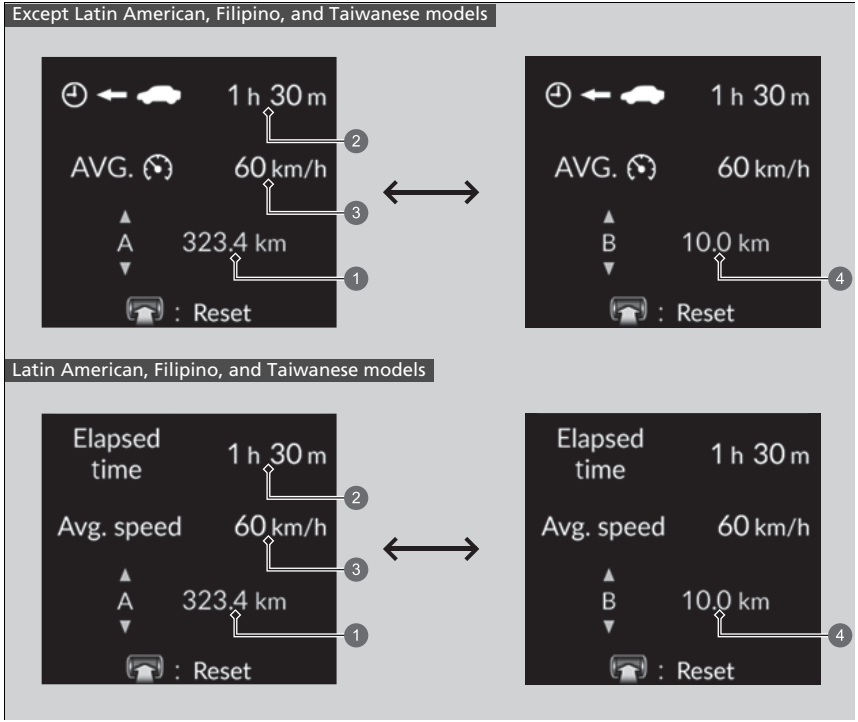
Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

* Not available on all models

Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip meter A
2. Elapsed Time
3. Average Speed
4. Trip meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

➡ **Trip meter** P. 152

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Settings** P. 157

Average Speed

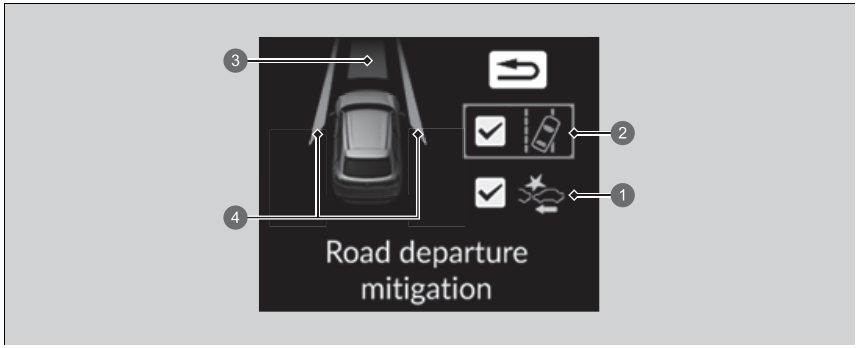
You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Settings** P. 157

■ Safety Support*

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



❶ CMBS Icon and Status Info
❷ Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
❸ Area Info for CMBS
❹ Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System

Safety Support*

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.
➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456
➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 436

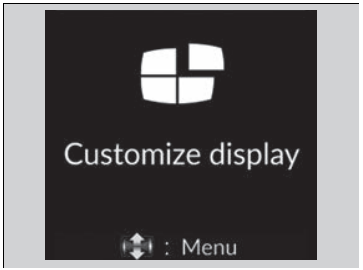
You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.
➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*** P. 120
➡ **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*** P. 121
➡ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)*** P. 122
➡ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)*** P. 124

* Not available on all models

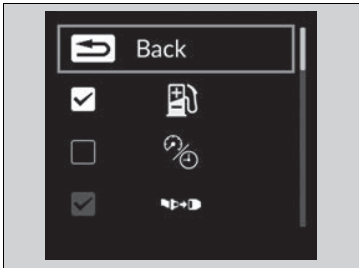
Continued

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

Information*1/Warnings*2

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Information*1/Warnings*2

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

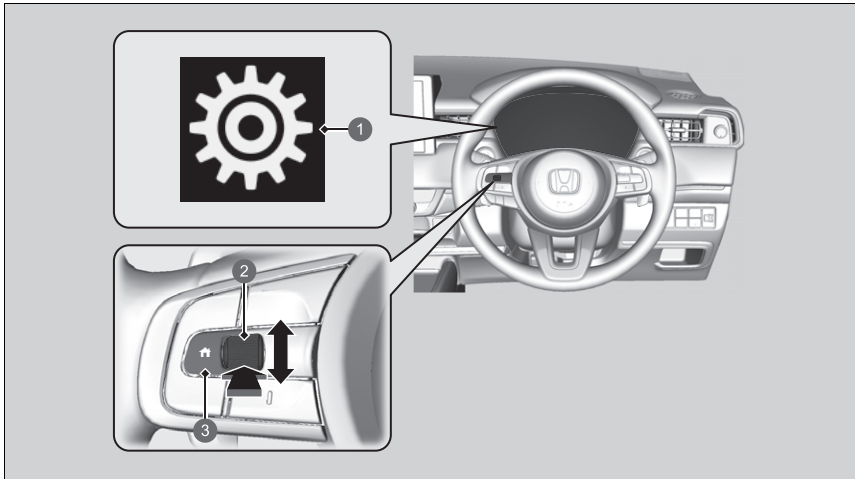
*1: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

How to customize

Press the (home) button, then select the screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in P. Then press the left selector wheel.



1. Driver Information Interface
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. (Home) Button

Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 158
Example of customization settings P. 170

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Continued

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Middle Eastern models **Deflation warning system** Taiwanese models **TPMS calibration**	—	Middle Eastern models Initialises the deflation warning system. Taiwanese models Calibrate the TPMS.	Middle Eastern models **Cancel/Initialise** Taiwanese models **Cancel/Calibrate**
Clock setup	**Adjust clock**	Adjust the time. ➔ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 176	—
	Clock display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	**24h/12h***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver assist system setup*	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Forward collision warning distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Far/Normal*1/Near** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Long/Normal*1/Short**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **ACC vehicle ahead detected beep** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **ACC forward vehicle detect beep**	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	**ON/OFF*1**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver assist system setup*	**Lead car departure notification system***	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal*1/Early/OFF**
	Road departure mitigation setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Early/Normal*1/Delayed/ Warning only** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Narrow/Normal*1/Wide/ Warning only**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Lane keep assist beep** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Lane keeping assist suspend beep**	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF*1**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	Middle Eastern models **Language** Latin American models **Language selection**	Changes the displayed language.	Middle Eastern models **English/Arabic**[*1] Latin American models **English/Français/Español**[*1]
	Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
	"Trip A" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When fully refueled/ When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When fully refueled/IGN OFF/Manually reset**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	**"Trip B" reset timing**	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When fully refueled/ When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1] Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When fully refueled/IGN OFF/Manually reset**[*1]
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Alarm volume control** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Adjust alarm volume**	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **High/Mid**[*1]**/Low**
	Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	**Rear seat reminder**	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Fuel economy unit[*]	Selects the fuel economy unit.	Except Vietnamese models **km/l**[*1]**/l/100km** Vietnamese models **km/l/l/100km**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access setup	**Door unlock mode***	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver door only*1/All doors**
	Keyless access beep volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High*1/Low**
	Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Remote start system ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Auto High-Beam*** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Auto high-beam***	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Adaptive driving beam*	Turns the Adaptive driving beam on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Interior light dimmer duration** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Interior light dimming time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec*1/15sec**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Headlight auto OFF timer** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Headlight auto off timer**	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Headlight integration with wipers** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Auto headlight ON with wiper ON**	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door setup	**Auto door lock***	Changes the setting for when the doors and tailgate automatically lock.	**With vehicle speed*1/ Shift from P/OFF**
	Auto door unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors and tailgate automatically unlock.	Except African right-hand drive models **Shift to P*1/IGN OFF/OFF** African right-hand drive models **Driver door with Shift to P*1/All doors with Shift to P/Driver door with IGN OFF/All doors with IGN OFF/OFF**
	Key and remote unlock mode*	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the keyless remote or built-in key.	African right-hand drive models **Driver door only*1/All doors** Latin American left-hand drive models **Driver door*1/All doors**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Walk away lock** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Walk away auto lock**	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF***1
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Keyless lock notification** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Keyless lock answer back**	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Keyless remote power window control*	Turns remote window control using the keyless remote on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Auto folding door mirror*	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	**Auto fold with keyless***1**/ Manual only**
	Lock presetting	Changes the settings for the lock presetting function.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Power tailgate setup*	**Keyless open mode**	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime*1/When Unlocked**
	Power open by outer handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)*1/ OFF (Manual Only)**
	Except Latin American models **Hands free access** Latin American models **Hands free access function**	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON*1/OFF**
Default all	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Cancel/OK** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Cancel/Set**

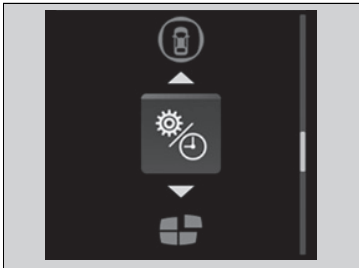
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

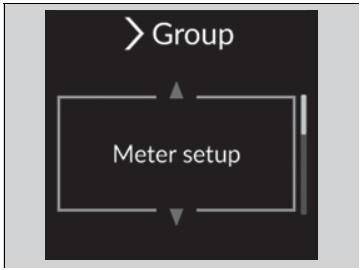
Continued

■ Example of customization settings

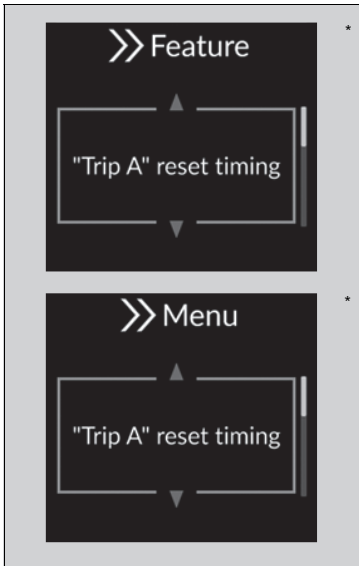
The steps for changing the **“Trip A” reset timing** setting to **When fully refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **“Trip A” reset timing** is **Manually reset/ Manual reset**.



1. Press the button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.



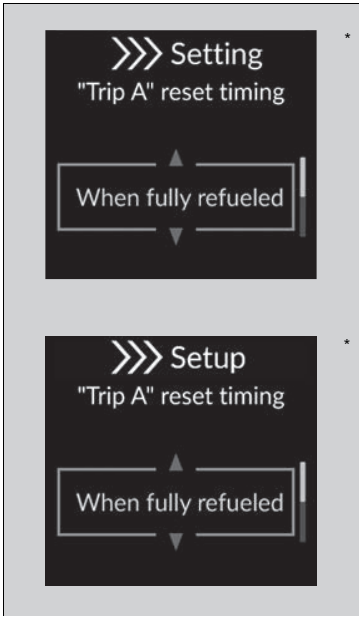
2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.



4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" reset timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When fully refueled**, **IGN OFF/When ignition is turned OFF**, **Manually reset/Manual reset**, or **Back**.

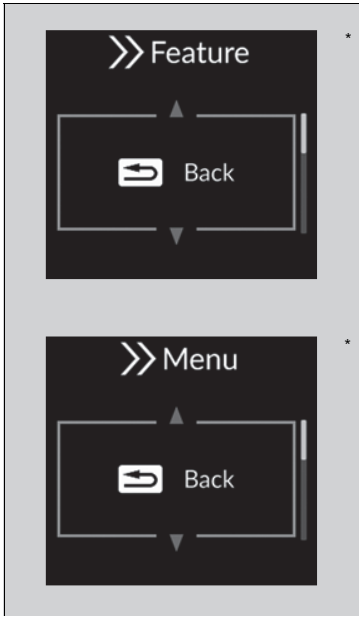
* Not available on all models

Continued



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When fully refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display will return to the customization menu screen.

* Not available on all models



6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

* Not available on all models

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock 176
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 180
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength ... 182
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 183
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 195
Childproof Door Locks 198
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* 199
Tailgate 200
Security System
Immobilizer System 212
Security System Alarm 213
Windows 215
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
ENGINE START/STOP Button 219
Lights 222
Active Cornering Lights* 229
Headlight Adjuster* 231
Auto High-Beam* 232
Adaptive Driving Beam* 235
Wipers and Washers 239
Rear Demister Button 242
Brightness Control 243
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 244
Mirrors 245
Seats 249
Interior Convenience Items 262
Climate Control System 280

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

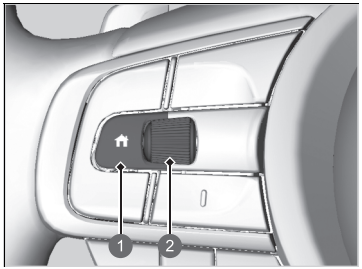
Adjusting the Clock

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Clock Setup P. 306

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.



❶ (Home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel

Except Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

■ Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

1. Press the (Home) button.

Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

You can change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

Models with A-type meter

➡ **Settings*** P. 140

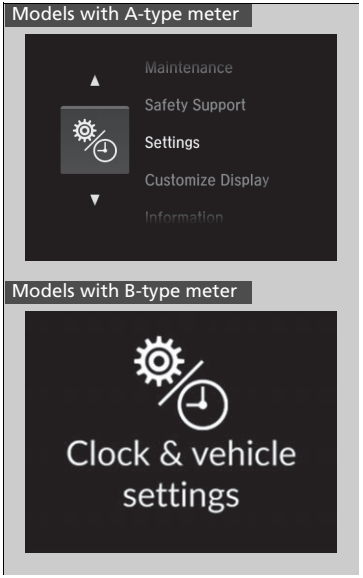
Models with B-type meter

➡ **Settings** P. 157

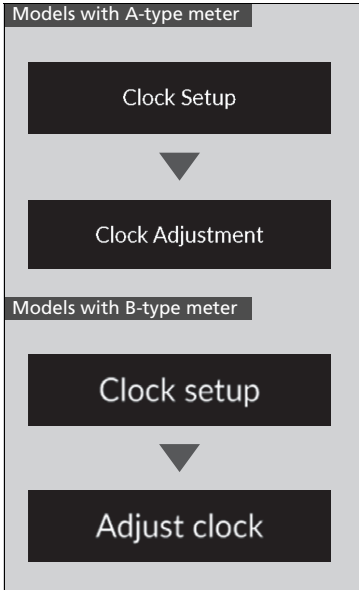
Controls

* Not available on all models

Continued



2. Roll the left selector wheel to select ⚙, then press the left selector wheel.



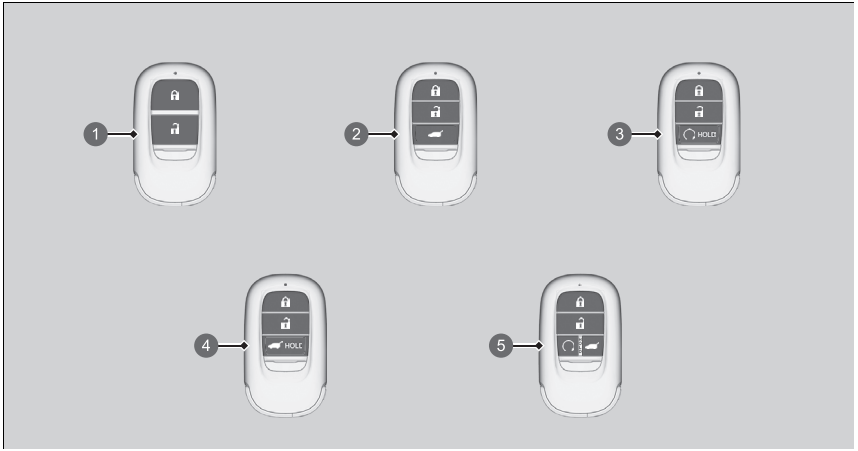
3. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**[*1]/**Clock setup**[*2], then press the left selector wheel.
4. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Adjustment**[*1]/**Adjust clock**[*2], then press the left selector wheel.

5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then press it.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then press it.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



1. Keyless Remote
2. Keyless Remote with tailgate unlock button
3. Keyless Remote with button
4. Keyless Remote with power tailgate button
5. Keyless Remote with button and power tailgate button

Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 212

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

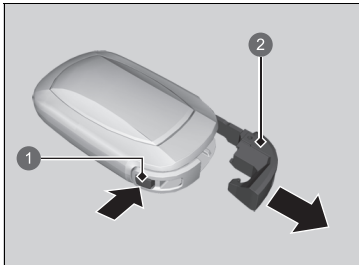
Models with button

You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start* P. 401

* Not available on all models

Built-in Key

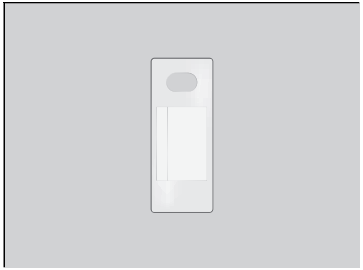


1 Release Button
2 Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/ unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull out the key while pressing the release button. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to start the engine, lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

In the following cases, starting the engine or locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

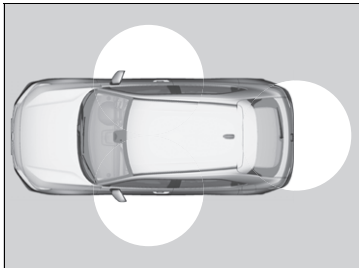
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate.
You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 262

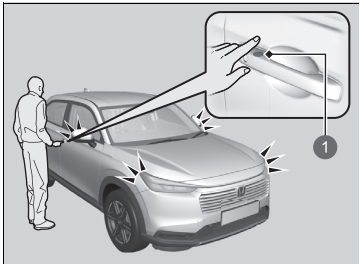
Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

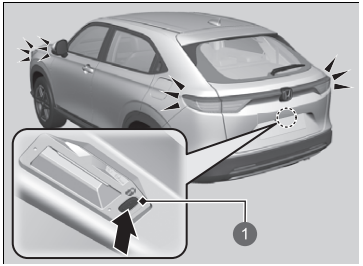
You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

Continued

■ Locking the doors and tailgate



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

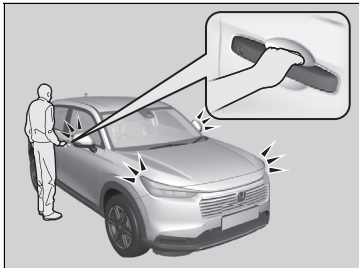
Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate, lock; and the security system sets.

Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, and tailgate.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate



Except Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

Except African models with right-hand drive type

Grab the front door handle:

- ▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

African models with right-hand drive type

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash, beep, and door unlock mode* settings can be customized using the driver information interface or audio/information screen*.

Models with A-type meter

➡ **Settings*** P. 140

Models with B-type meter

➡ **Settings** P. 157

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 353

Models with power tailgate

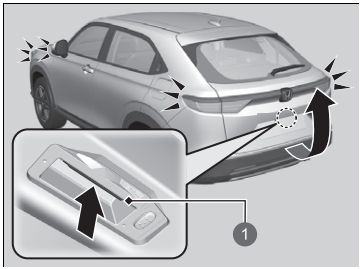
You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*** P. 203

Controls

* Not available on all models

Continued



1 Outer Handle

Press the outer handle:

Except Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

Except African models with right-hand drive type

▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

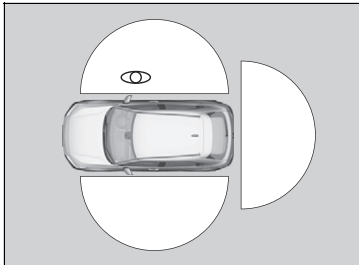
African models with right-hand drive type

▶ The tailgate unlocks.

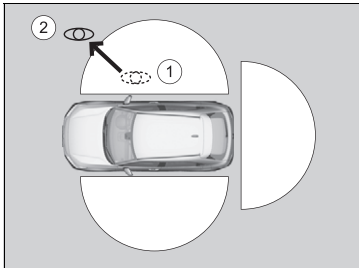
All models

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 201



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m



■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed or all doors are closed and tailgate begins power close operation*, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Exit the vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s) and tailgate.

① While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

② Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface or audio/information screen*.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface or audio/information screen*, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Models with A-type meter

➔ **Settings*** P. 140

Models with B-type meter

➔ **Settings** P. 157

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

➔ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 353

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

Models with power tailgate

If equipped, the user must wait until the power tailgate fully closes before the auto lock function will be activated.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

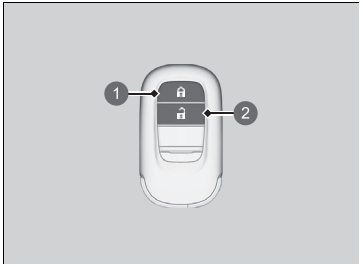
If you use the power tailgate walk away close function when all the doors are closed, the auto lock function will also be activated.

▶When you walk away from the vehicle while the power tailgate is automatically closing, it will continue to lock automatically.

Power Tailgate Walk Away Close P. 205

Continued

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

Except Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

Except African models with right-hand drive type

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors and tailgate unlock.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

African models with right-hand drive type

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlock.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➔ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 603

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

African models with right-hand drive type

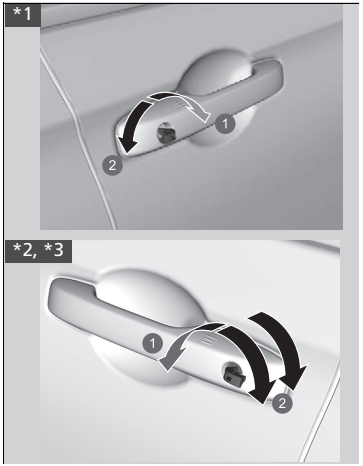
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➔ **Settings** P. 157

Continued

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

❶ Lock
❷ Unlock

*1: Except Latin American models with left-hand drive type, African models with right-hand drive type, and New Caledonia models
*2: Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models
*3: African models with right-hand drive type
*4: Except Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Middle Eastern, Ghanaian, and Nigerian models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

*1
When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

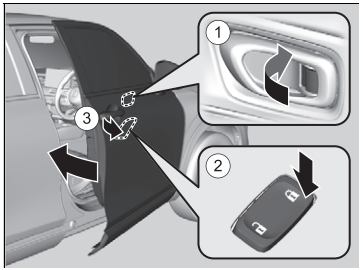
*2, *3
When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and tailgate.

*4
If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

*2, *3
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.
➡ **Settings** P. 157

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

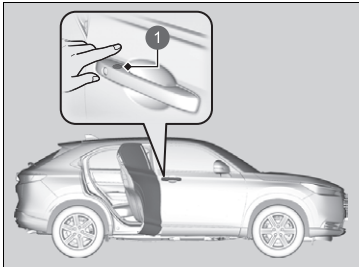
Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Continued

Lock Presetting



1 Door Lock Sensor

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and tailgate.

Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

1. Touch the door lock sensor on the driver's door or press the lock button on the remote transmitter.
   ▶ Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.
2. Close all doors and the tailgate.
   ▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

Lock Presetting

Models with power tailgate

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the power tailgate on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury. Make sure all hands and fingers, especially children's, are clear of the power tailgate.

All models

Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

Models with A-type meter

Settings* P. 140

Models with B-type meter

Settings P. 157

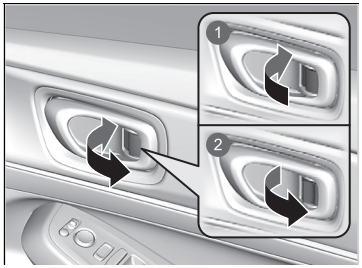
Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 353

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



❶ To lock
❷ To unlock

■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

Except African models with right-hand drive type

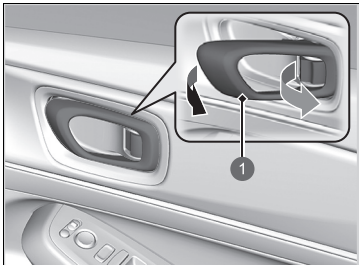
When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

African models with right-hand drive type

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

Continued

Unlocking Using the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door* Inner Handle



1 Inner Handle

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

African models with right-hand drive type

Latin American models with right-hand drive type

The front passenger's door also unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking Using the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door* Inner Handle

The driver's door and front passenger's* door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

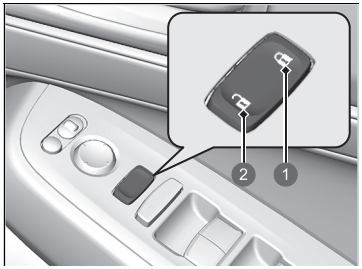
Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 198

Controls

* Not available on all models

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

❶ To lock
❷ To unlock

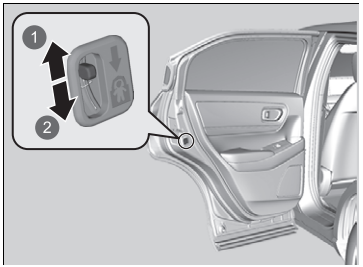
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

Auto Door Locking

Drive lock mode

All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

Auto Door Unlocking

Park unlock mode

Except African models with right-hand drive type

All doors and tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

African models with right-hand drive type

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

Models with A-type meter

Settings* P. 140

Models with B-type meter

Settings P. 157

* Not available on all models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 103

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

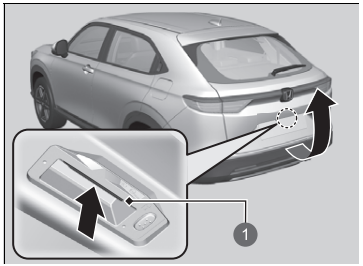
Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

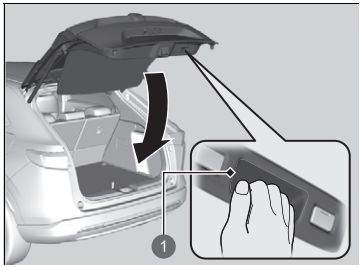
* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Tailgate



❶ Outer Handle

When all the doors are unlocked or you press the tailgate unlock button* on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.
If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



❶ Inner Handle

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

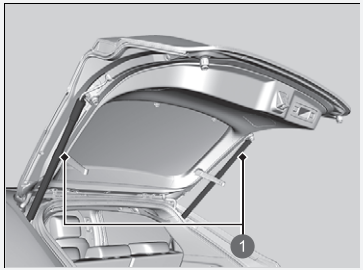
Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

African models with right-hand drive type

If you close the tailgate when the driver's door is locked, the tailgate locks automatically.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Make sure luggage or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



❶ Tailgate Support Struts

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

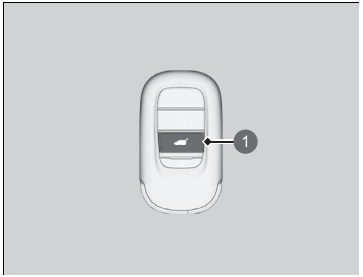
African models with right-hand drive type

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be closed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Using the Remote Transmitter*



Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

1 Tailgate Unlock Button

Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver's side control panel, pressing the outer handle on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

WARNING

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

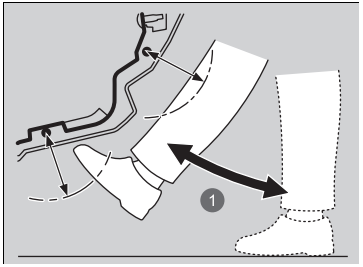
Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Using the Hands Free Access



❶ About 1 second

Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.

Using the Hands Free Access

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the driver information interface and then select OFF for the feature.

Models with A-type meter

➔ **Settings*** P. 140

Models with B-type meter

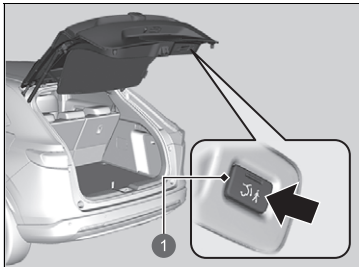
➔ **Settings** P. 157

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.
This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

* Not available on all models

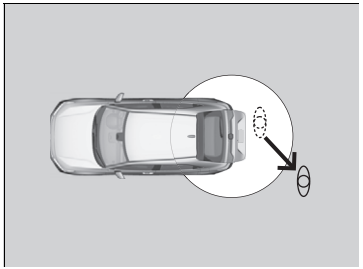
Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the power tailgate will automatically close.



❶ Walk Away Close Button

1. Carry the keyless remote and press the walk away close button.
   ▶ The indicator on the walk away close button will turn green when the walk away close is activated.



Walk at least 1.0 m away

2. Walk at least 1.0 m away from the vehicle within 30 seconds of pressing the walk away close button.
   ▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds, then the power tailgate begins to close.

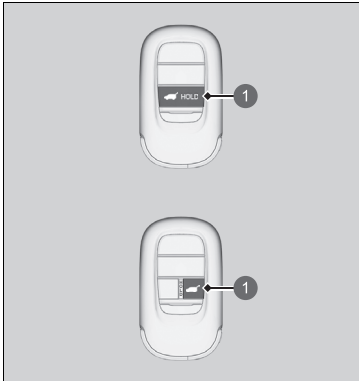
Continued

Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When auto lock function is set to ON, the vehicle will automatically lock when all doors and the tailgate have closed.

➡ **Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)** P. 187

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Power Tailgate Button

Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.
When Unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

Models with A-type meter

Settings* P. 140

Models with B-type meter

Settings P. 157

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:
- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

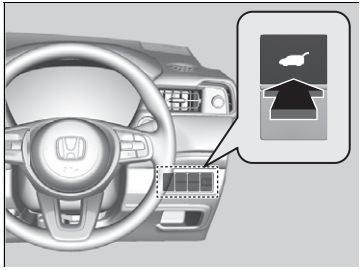
Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

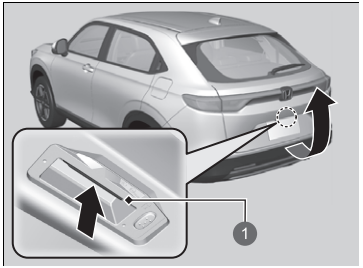
If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



1 Outer Handle

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.

➔ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 201

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be closed.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

Models with A-type meter

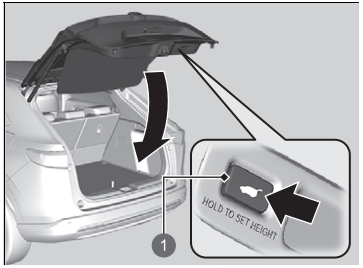
➔ **Settings*** P. 140

Models with B-type meter

➔ **Settings** P. 157

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



❶ Tailgate Inner Button

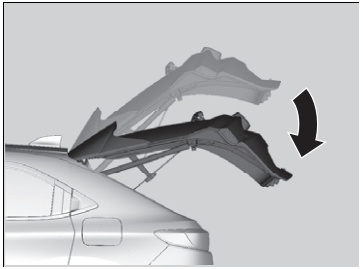
Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

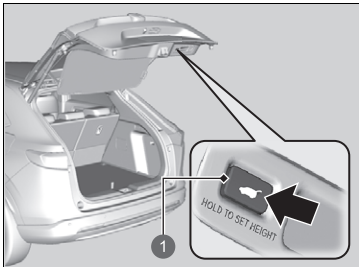
▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Continued

Programming Tailgate Position





1 Tailgate Inner Button

The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.

2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button. You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the directions step 2.

■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

Auto-Closer

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, with snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

*1: Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Middle Eastern, Ghanaian, and Nigerian models

Continued

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and the security system alarm indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

Models with power tailgate

- Opening the tailgate with the power tailgate button on the dashboard.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key*2, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

*1: Except Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Middle Eastern, Ghanaian, and Nigerian models
*2: Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Middle Eastern, Ghanaian, and Nigerian models

Security System Alarm

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key*2, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

*1

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Continued

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Models without auto-open/close function on driver's window

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Auto-open/close function on front windows

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

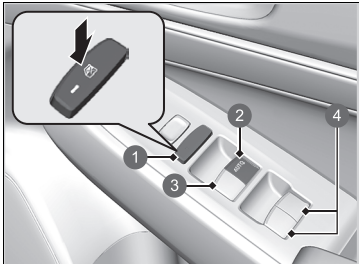
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



1. Power Window Lock Button
2. Driver's Window Switch
3. Front Passenger's Window Switch*
4. Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

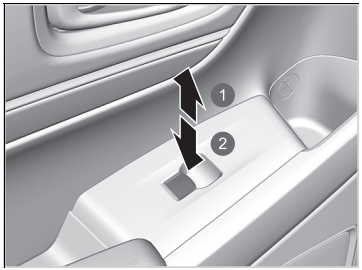
■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*



❶ Close
❷ Open

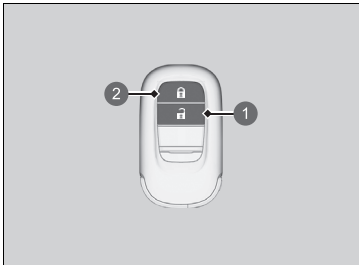
To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote*



❶ Unlock Button
❷ Lock Button

To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

■ Opening*/Closing the Windows with the Key*

❶ Close
❷ Open

To open*: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote*

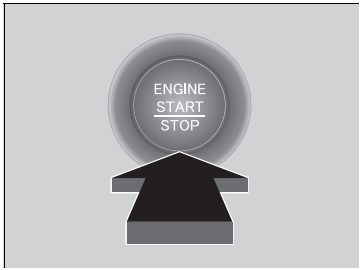
You can turn the remote window control function on and off.

➡ **Settings** P. 157

* Not available on all models

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **ENGINE START/ STOP** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than P.

Continued

Automatic Power Off

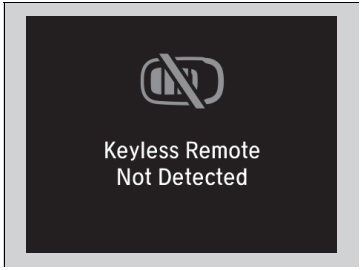
If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and all the doors are closed, the warning function cancels.

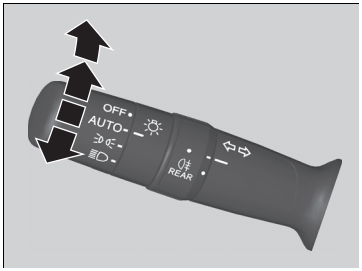
If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been turned on, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the keyless remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the keyless remote is within the system's operational range.

Lights

■ Headlights/Position Lights



The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.

The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in P and the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➔ **Lights On Indicator** P. 114

Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to or and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

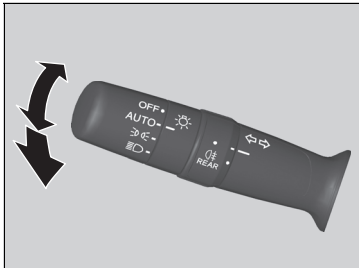
Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Models without headlight adjust function

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



■ Flashing the high beams

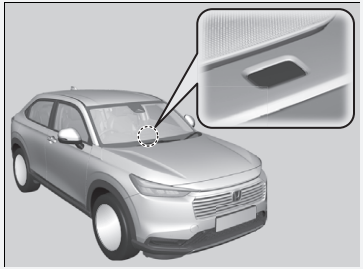
Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

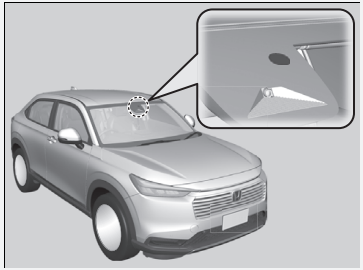
Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor.

Models without automatic intermittent wiper

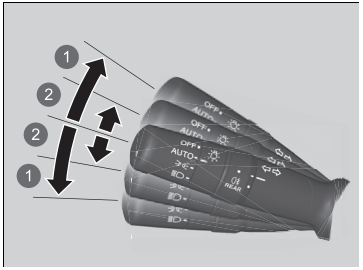


Models with automatic intermittent wiper



Continued

■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

➔ **Indicators** P. 106

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Continued

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Models with A-type meter
➡ **Settings*** P. 140
Models with B-type meter
➡ **Settings** P. 157
Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 353

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Models with A-type meter
➡ **Settings*** P. 140
Models with B-type meter
➡ **Settings** P. 157
Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 353

* Not available on all models

■ Fog Lights*

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

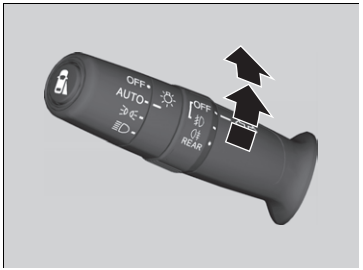
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights* are on.

■ Front and rear fog light switch*



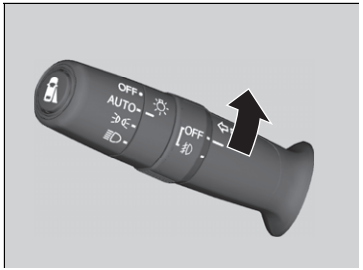
To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position. The indicator comes on.

To turn the front and rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position. The and indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position and then rotate the switch one position down from the position. The indicator stays on.
To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

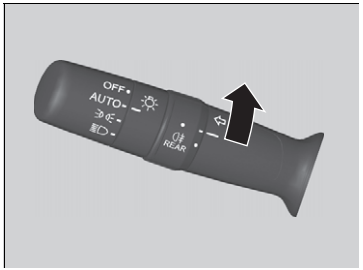
* Not available on all models

■ Front fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to the . The indicator comes on.

■ Rear fog light switch*



To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to . The indicator comes on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

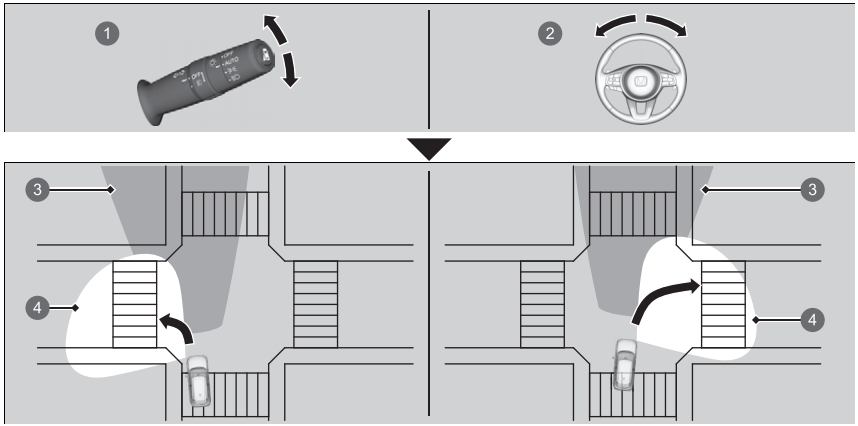
Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

Active Cornering Lights*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 36 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or put the transmission into R.

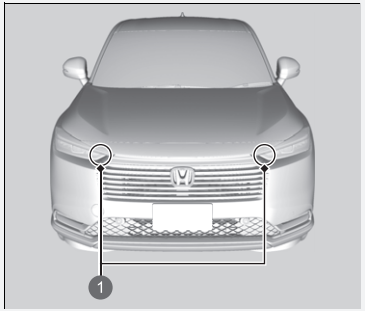
■ **The corner you are making a turn towards is illuminated when:**



❶ You operate the turn signal lever.
❷ You turn the steering wheel around 75 degrees or more.
❸ Headlight beam coverage
❹ Cornering light beam coverage

Active Cornering Lights*

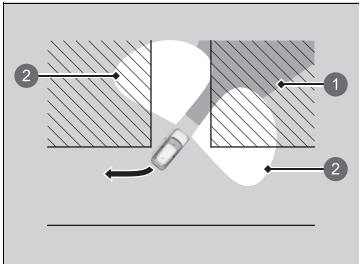
The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in R, move it to another position momentarily.



❶ Active Cornering Lights

* Not available on all models

Continued

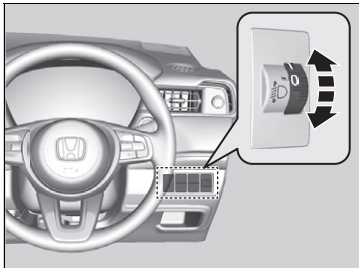


❶ Headlight beam coverage
❷ Cornering light beam coverage

■ **Both front corners are illuminated when:**

You put the transmission into R.

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights or headlights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Four*1 or five*2 persons in the front and rear seats	1
Four*1 or five*2 persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

*1:Australian and Fijian models
*2:Except Australian and Fijian models

Headlight Adjuster*

Models with adaptive driving beam

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Auto High-Beam*

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to [ ] then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	⬌	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

Continued

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡O and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≡O.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Auto High-Beam*

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Models with A-type meter

➔ **Settings*** P. 140

Models with B-type meter

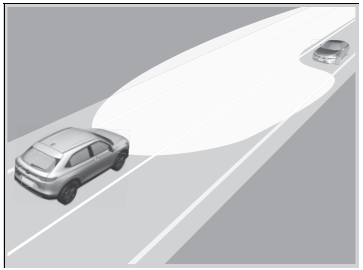
➔ **Settings** P. 157

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

➔ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 353

* Not available on all models

Adaptive Driving Beam*



When driving at night, the front wide view camera detects light sources such as street lights or the lights of an oncoming or preceding vehicle. The system automatically switches the headlights between low and high beam depending on the situation.
In addition, the system automatically adjusts the light distribution of the high beams in order to reduce glare for preceding and oncoming vehicles.

The system also increases the coverage of the low beams when the low beams are on and the vehicle speed is 40 km/h or less, improving visibility to the left and right.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

The adaptive driving beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

For the adaptive driving beam to work properly:
- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Use the Adaptive Driving Beam

Activating the system

The adaptive driving beam indicator comes on, and the system begins adjusting the light distribution of the high beams when all of the following conditions are met.

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Adaptive Driving Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

If the adaptive driving beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

How to turn off the Adaptive Driving Beam System

You can turn the adaptive driving beam system on and off.

Models with B-type meter

Settings P. 157

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 353

* Not available on all models

■ Automatically adjusting the light distribution

The system starts to automatically adjust the light distribution of the high beams once the vehicle speed is 10 km/h or higher, and the light distribution changes depending on vehicle speed, or under the following conditions:

- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

If the vehicle speed slows to 6 km/h or lower, the system stops automatically adjusting the light distribution and switches the headlights to low beam.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

In the following cases, the adaptive driving beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The adaptive driving beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedure below. Note that when you do this, the adaptive driving beam indicator will turn off and the adaptive driving beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, follow either of the procedures below and the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to [≡D] and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

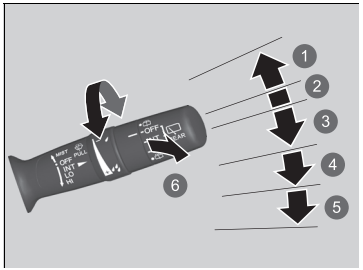
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to [≡D].

▶ To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



❶ **MIST**
❷ **OFF**
❸ **INT**[*1]**/AUTO**[*2]
❹ **LO**: Low speed wipe
❺ **HI**: High speed wipe
❻ Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*1, AUTO*2, LO, HI)
Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*
Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer
Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE
Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring
If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (⏲) and the **LO** setting become the same.

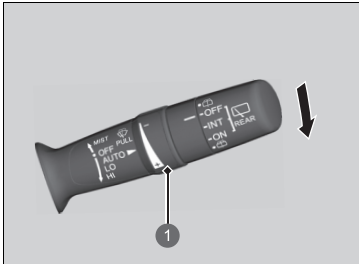
NOTICE
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



❶ Adjustment Ring

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

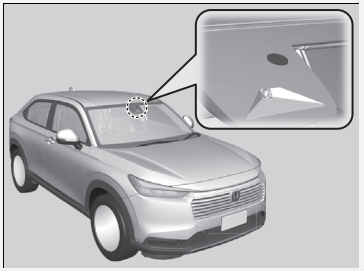
Sensor sensitivity

Low sensitivity

High sensitivity

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



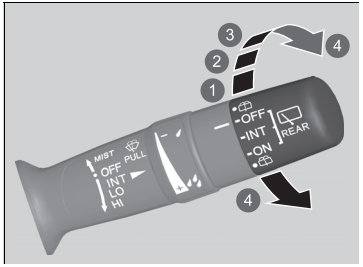
NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ **OFF**
❷ **INT**: Intermittent
❸ **ON**: Continuous wipe
❹ Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

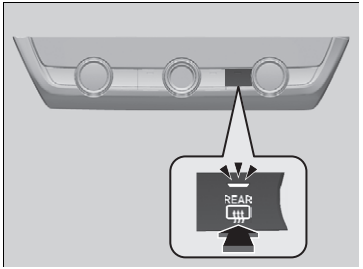
■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT*1 (Intermittent) **AUTO***2 (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low-speed wipe) **HI** (High-speed wipe)	Continuous

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Rear Demister Button



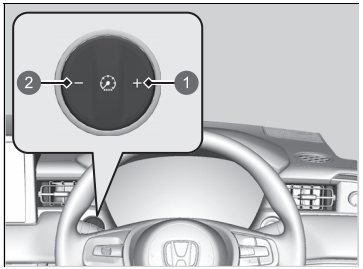
Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Brightness Control



❶ ⊞ Button
❷ ⊟ Button

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the ⊞ or ⊟ button to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Press the ⊞ button.
Dim: Press the ⊟ button.

Except African models with right-hand drive type

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum.

All models

Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

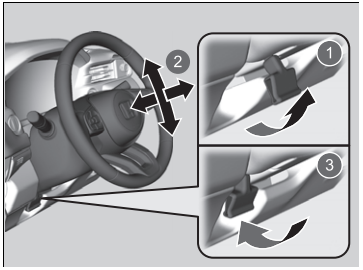
Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on.
- The ambient lighting is low.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.

2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

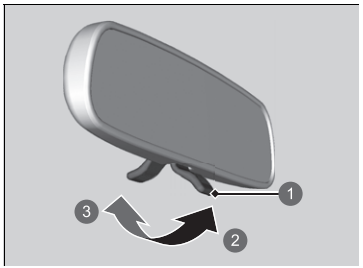
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

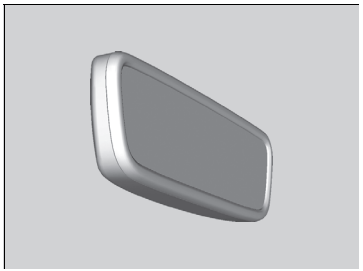
Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

1. Tab
2. Night Position
3. Daytime Position

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

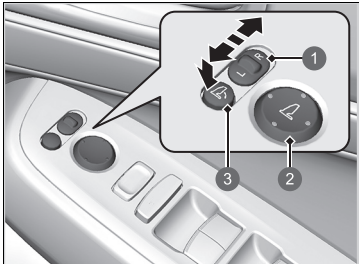
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
Front Seats P. 249

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



❶ Selector Switch
❷ Adjustment Switch
❸ Folding Door Mirror Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

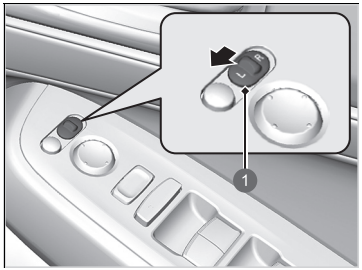
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



❶ Selector Switch

If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into R; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of R.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON, and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, or touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the keyless remote or keyless access system. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding door mirror button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Models with A-type meter

➡ **Settings*** P. 140

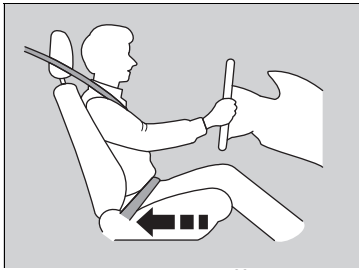
Models with B-type meter

➡ **Settings** P. 157

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Continued

Adjusting the Seat Positions

Adjusting the driver's power seat*

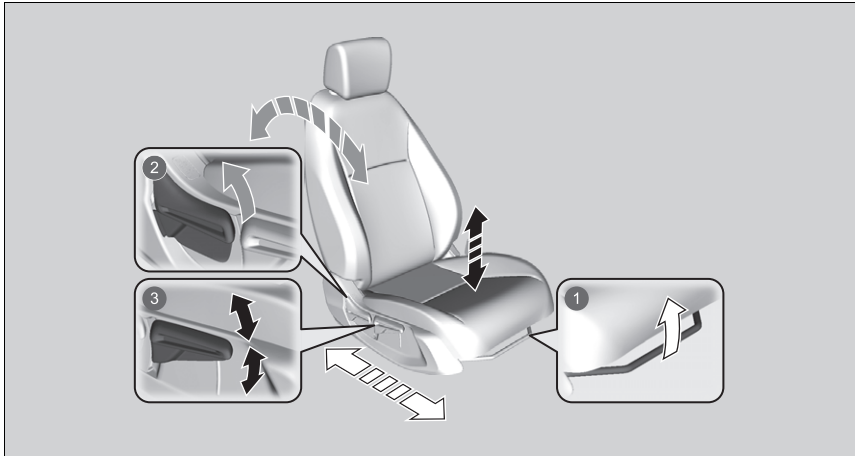
1 Horizontal Position Adjustment
Slide the switch to move the seat.

2 Height Adjustment
Pull up or push down the switch to raise or lower the seat.

3 Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Push forward or pull backward the switch to change the angle.

* Not available on all models

■ Adjusting the front manual seat



❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

❷ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

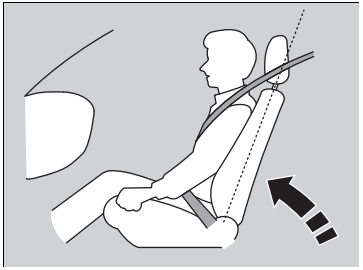
❸ **Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

Adjusting the front manual seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Continued

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

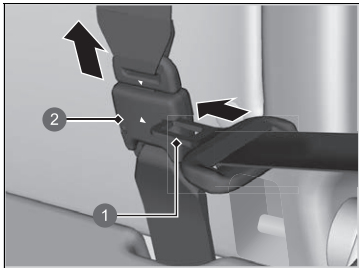
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

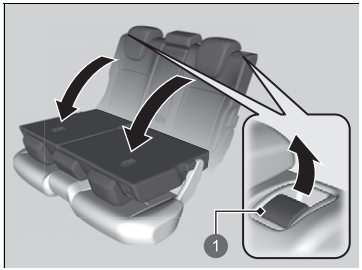
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Folding Down the Rear Seats



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Anchorage Buckle



❶ Release Lever

Except Australian and Fijian models

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   ➡ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*** P. 52

All models

3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.
4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

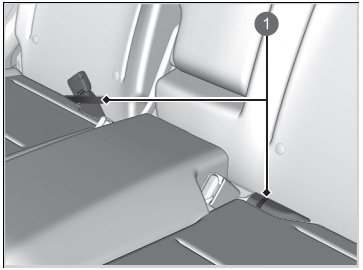
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Folding Up the Rear Seat



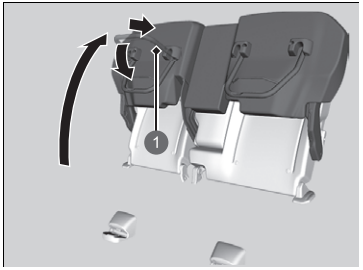
❶ Loop

Separately lift up the left and right rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

■ Lifting up the seat cushion

Except Australian and Fijian models

1. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.



❶ Seat Leg

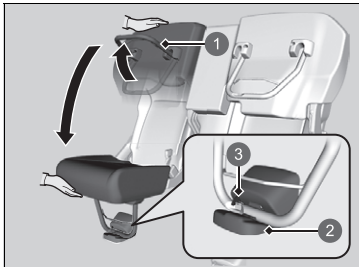
All models

2. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
4. Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

Folding Up the Rear Seat

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat-back in the original position.



❶ Seat Leg
❷ Floor Guide
❸ Latch

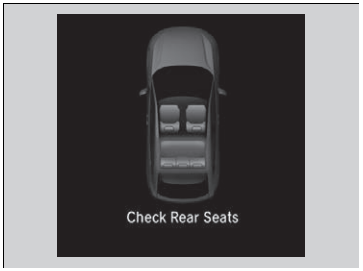
■ Putting the seat in the original position

1. Hold the seat cushion in place with one hand, then unlock it by pulling up the seat leg fully with your other hand.
▶ Hold the seat cushion firmly, as it may abruptly fall when you unlock it.

2. Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Models with A-type meter

➡ **Settings*** P. 140

Models with B-type meter

➡ **Settings** P. 157

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 353

* Not available on all models

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

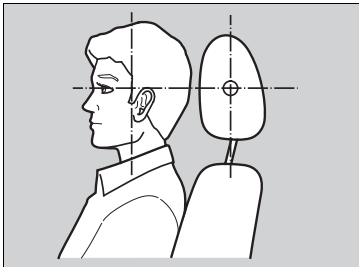
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

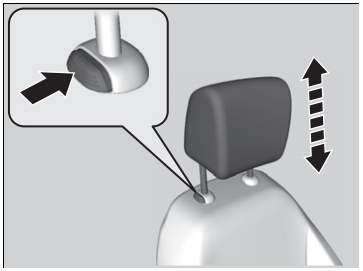
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions

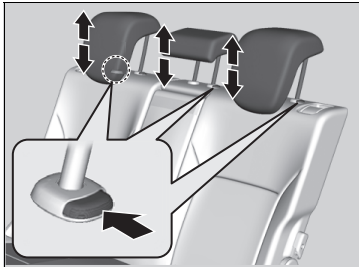
⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the outer or centre* back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

Except Australian and Fijian models

* Not available on all models

Continued

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

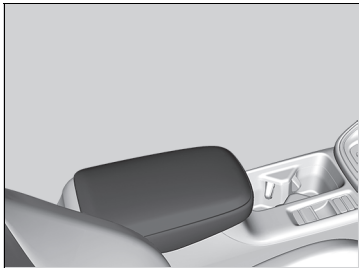
⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

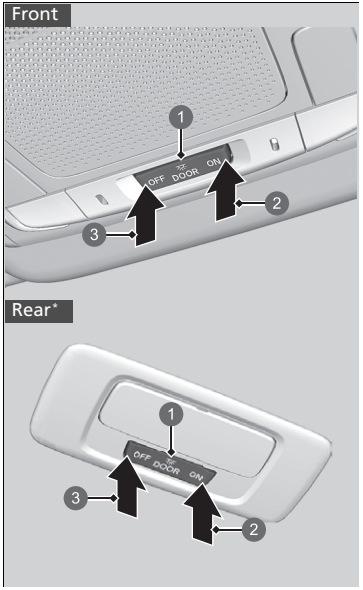
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest*

Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

* Not available on all models

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



1 Door Activated Position
2 On
3 Off

ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights turn off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with A-type meter

Settings* P. 140

Models with B-type meter

Settings P. 157

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 353

The interior lights turn off immediately in the following situations:

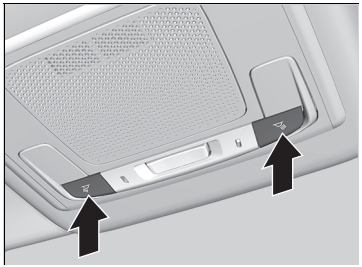
- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

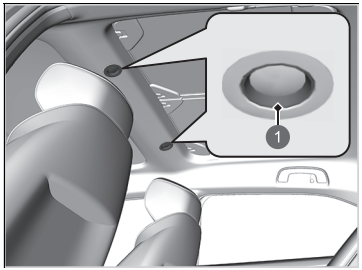
* Not available on all models

Map Light Switches



Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.



Rear seat*

The map lights can be turned on and off by touching the map lights.

❶ Touch

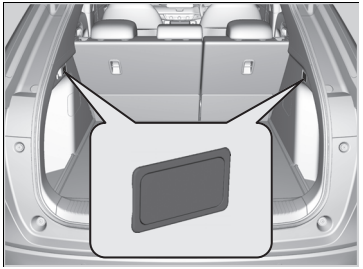
Map Light Switches

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the buttons or touch the map lights*.

* Not available on all models

Continued

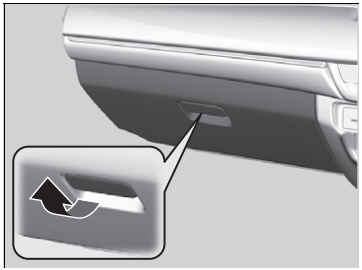
Luggage Area Lights



The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

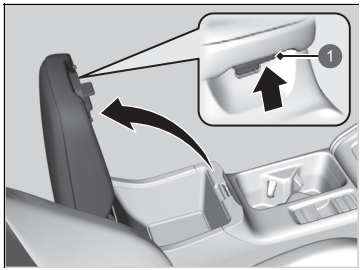
Storage Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Console Box



Pull the knob to open the console box.

1 Knob

Glove Box

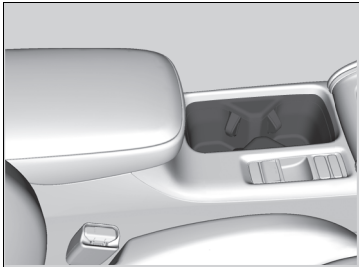
WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

Beverage Holders



Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

Front door side beverage holders

Are located on both of front door side pockets.

Rear door side beverage holders

Are located on both of rear door.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

■ Rear seat beverage holders*

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

■ Coat Hooks

There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles.

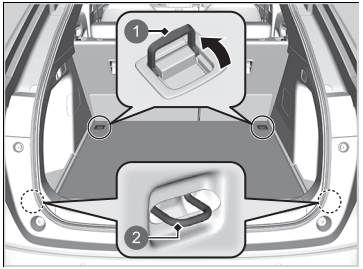
Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Tie-down Anchorages



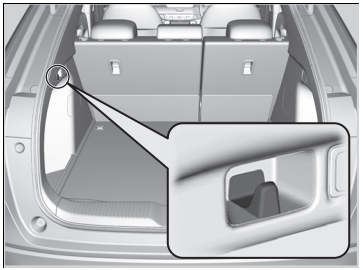
The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

1. Anchorages
2. Anchorages

Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Luggage Hook



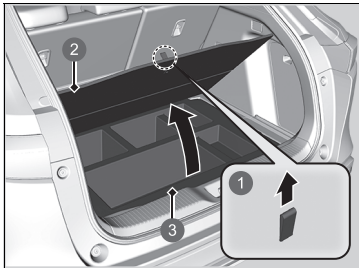
The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lbs) on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

■ Under-floor Storage Area*



Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.

❶ Strap
❷ Luggage Floor Lid
❸ Luggage Floor Box

Under-floor Storage Area*

⚠WARNING

Do not pull out or push in parcels while driving.

This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

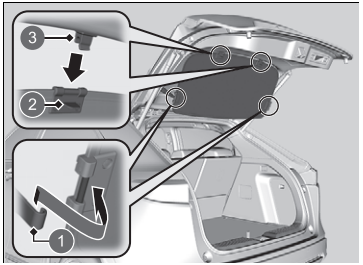
Do not drive with the lid upright.
This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

* Not available on all models

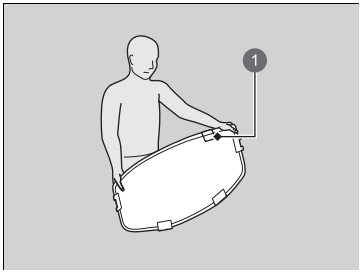
Continued

■ Luggage Area Cover*

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.



❶ Hooks
❷ Tab
❸ Guide



❶ Tag

■ To remove the luggage area cover

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the luggage area cover from hooks on both sides.
3. Remove the cover from the guide while keeping the tab depressed.

   Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

   After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

■ To store the luggage area cover

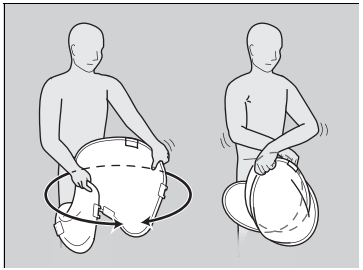
1. Hold the corner near the tag on the cover.

Luggage Area Cover*

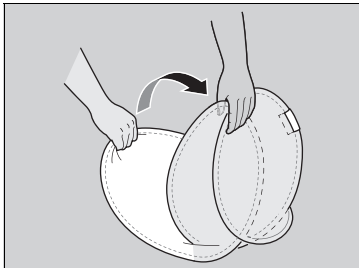
Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

When removing the luggage area cover, hold it firmly with your hands as it may open vigorously. Carefully check the surrounds and slowly open the cover while holding it firmly with both hands.

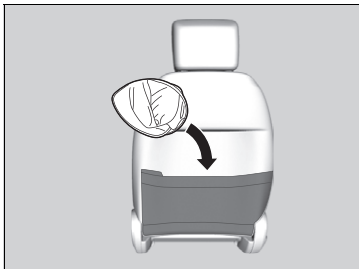
* Not available on all models



2. Hold both corners of the luggage area cover with your arms crossed one on the other and fold the cover.



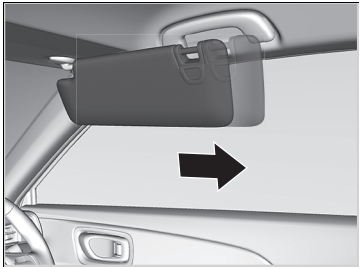
3. Bring both circular halves together in perfect alignment.



4. Store the luggage area cover in the back pocket of the front seat while keeping it firmly pushed by hand.

Other Interior Convenience Items

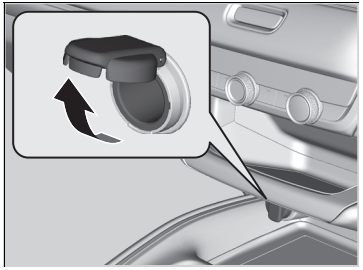
■ Sun Visor



The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

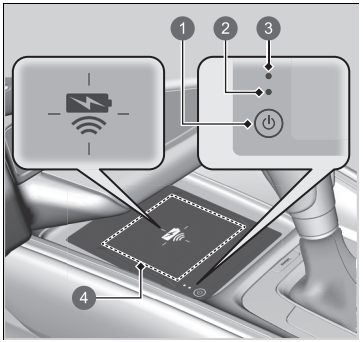
To prevent battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the engine is running.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Continued

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



❶ (Power) Button
❷ Green Indicator
❸ Amber Indicator
❹ Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
   ▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
   ▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

■ Change the charging frequency

Press the button once while charging will change the charging frequency and reduce radio noise.

▶ The amber indicator light blink three times.
▶ Before changing the frequency, turn the system off to make sure the radio noise is reduced.

Wireless Charger*

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

RF Radiation Exposure Statement:
This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

* Not available on all models

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta-neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger*

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

* Not available on all models

Continued

Wireless Charger*

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All doors or the tailgate are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

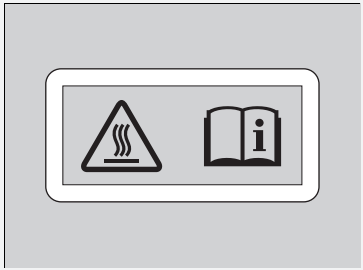
Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge. The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

* Not available on all models

Wireless Charger*

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

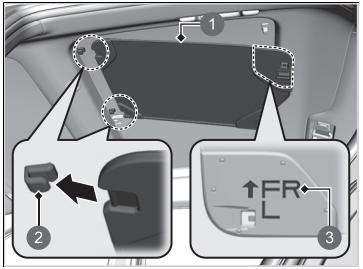


Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

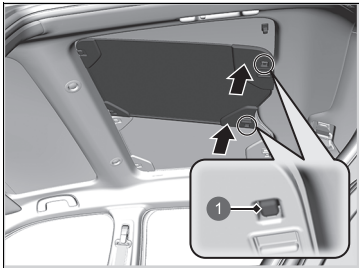
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Rear Sunshades*



❶ Rear Sunshade
❷ Hooks
❸ FR Mark



❶ Lock

■ Rear sunshades Installation

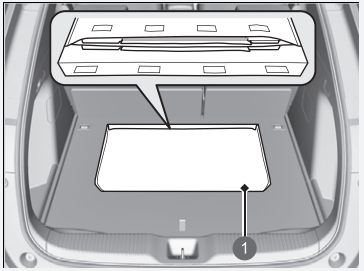
1. Insert the front side into the hooks.
▶ Install the rear sunshade as FR mark towards front.

2. Push up the rear side and lock.
▶ Push the rear sunshades until you hear a click.

Rear Sunshades*

Park the vehicle in a safe place before installing and removing the rear sunshades. Also, make sure the rear sunshades are securely latched back into place before driving.

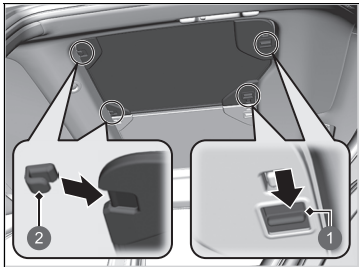
Put the removed rear sunshade in the case and store it in the luggage area.



❶ Case

To prevent rear sunshades damage, follow the instruction below.
- Do not place things on top of the case.
- Exercise care so that things around will not hit the case.

* Not available on all models



❶ Lever
❷ Hooks

■ Rear sunshades Removal

1. Push and hold the lever inside and pull down the rear sunshades.
2. Pull out the rear sunshades rearwards and remove it.

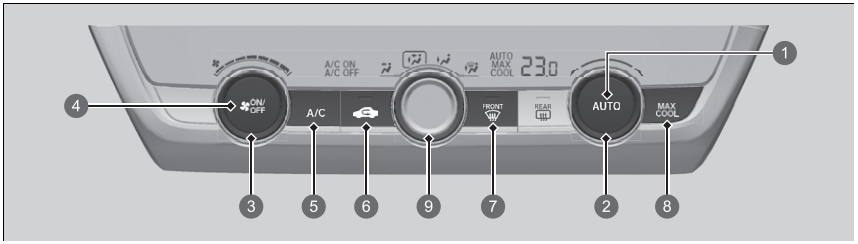
Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated* or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

Models without SYNC button



1. **AUTO** Button*1
2. Temperature Control Dial*1
3. Fan Control Dial*1
4. **ON/OFF** Button*1
5. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1
6. (Recirculation) Button*1
7. FRONT (Windscreen Demister) Button*1
8. **MAX COOL** Button*, *1
9. MODE Control Dial
   - Air flows from dashboard vents
   - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
   - Air flows from floor vents
   - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1: Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

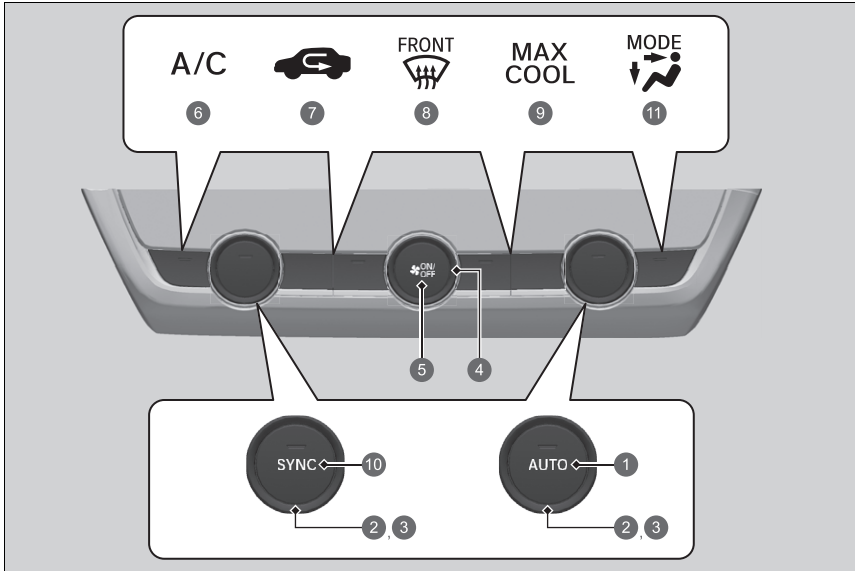
The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

Models without max cool button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Models with SYNC button



Because buttons and layouts vary depending on the models, them used in this manual may differ from your vehicle.

Using Automatic Climate Control

Models with max cool button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button (indicator on* or **MAX COOL** is appeared*).

All Models

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi*** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

* Not available on all models

Continued

1. **AUTO** Button
2. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
4. Fan Control Dial
5. **ON/OFF** Button
6. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
7. (Recirculation) Button
8. (Windscreen Demister) Button
9. **MAX COOL** Button*
10. **SYNC** (Synchronization) Button
11. MODE Control Button
    - Air flows from dashboard vents
    - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
    - Air flows from floor vents
    - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

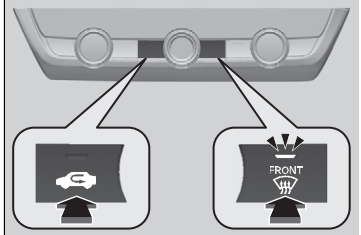
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

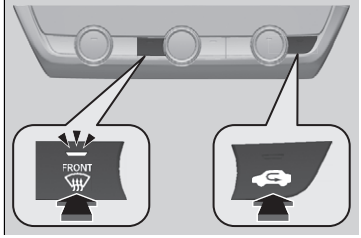
* Not available on all models

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Models without SYNC button



Models with SYNC button



Australian and Fijian models

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

African models with right-hand drive type

Pressing the FRONT button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Models for other countries

1. Pressing the FRONT button to turn the air conditioning system on.
2. Select the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.
3. Press the FRONT button to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

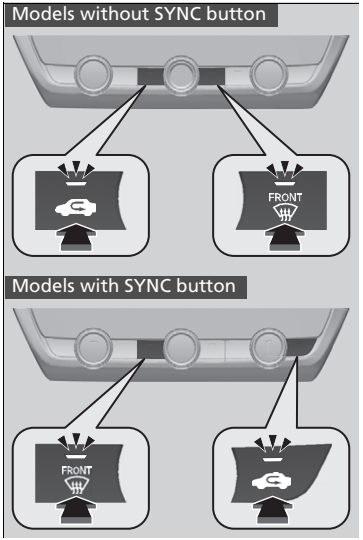
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

Continued

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

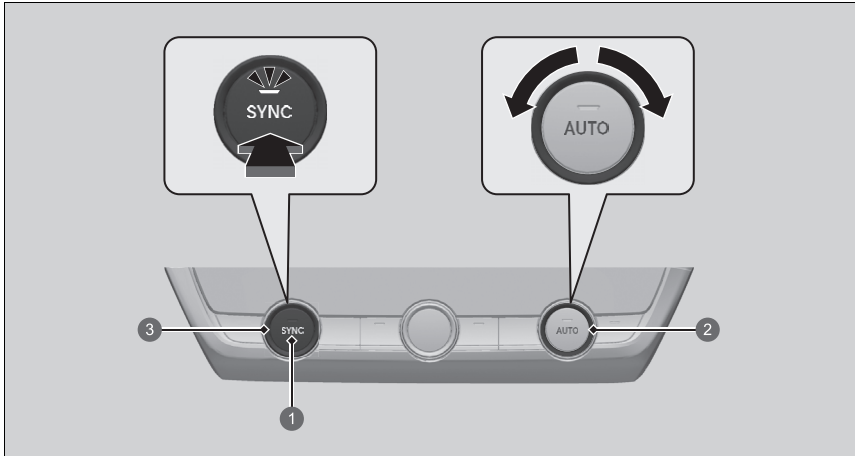


1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button (indicator on).

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode*



❶ **SYNC** button
❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

Synchronization Mode*

When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can not be set separately.

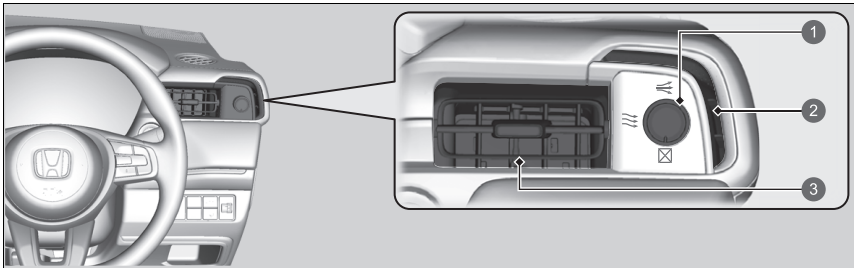
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Selecting the Desired Air Outlet

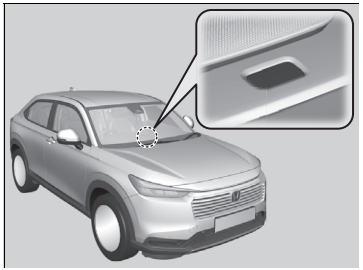
You can select the desired air outlet by turning the dial to the respective position.

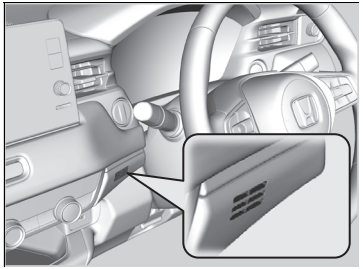
selects outlet ❷.
selects outlet ❸.
selects blockage of both ❷ and ❸.



❶ Dial
❷ Air Outlet
❸ Air Outlet

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

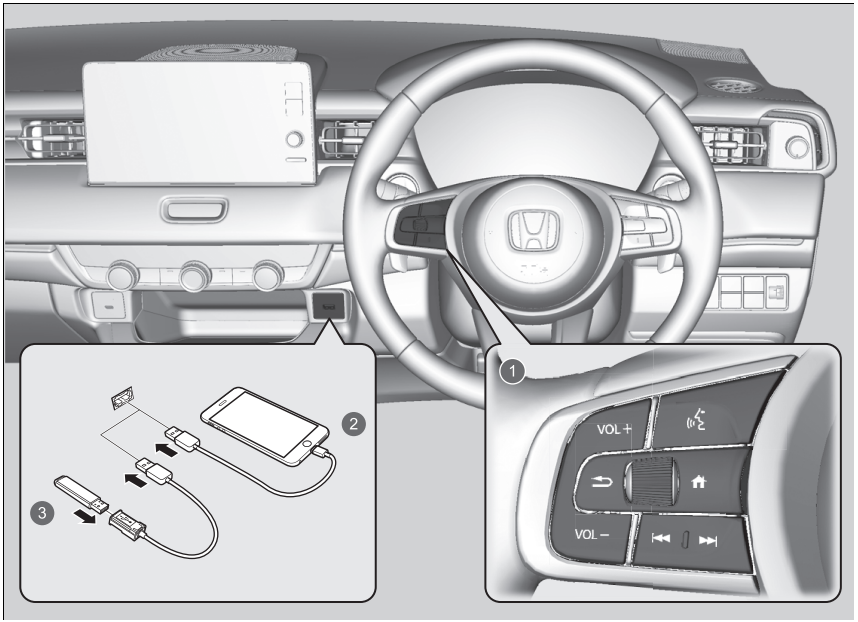
Audio System..... 290
Display Audio*..... 292
Audio Error Messages* 379
General Information on the Audio System* 380
Refuel Recommend*..... 390

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System*

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)* service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

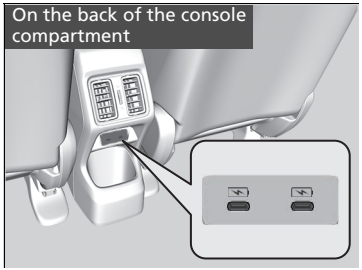
You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.



1. Remote Controls
2. iPod
3. USB Flash Drive

* Not available on all models

USB Ports*



■ USB charging port ( )

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

USB Ports*

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

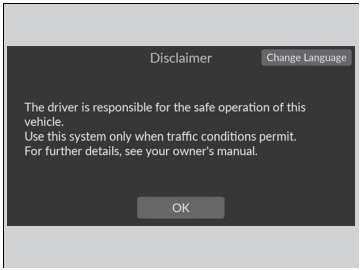
The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless the device requests.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

* Not available on all models

Start Up

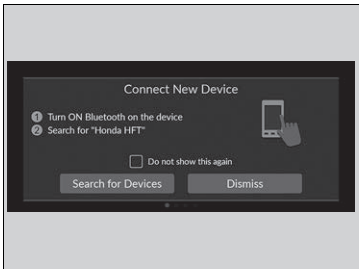
The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.



Select **OK**.

▶ If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.

▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.

▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

 * Not available on all models

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

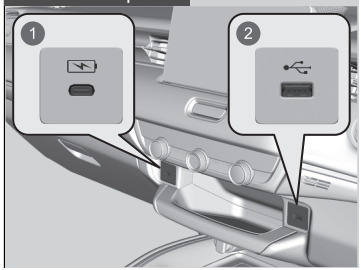
❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ **Display Mode** Icon
❻ Mode Change Switch Icons
❼ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❽ **VOL/ ⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❾ BACK (Back) Button
❿ HOME (Home) Button

Continued

All Apps: Displays all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment.
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
/ (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
(Back) Button: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.
(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.

■ USB Ports

On the front panel



❶ Only for charging devices
❷ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones

■ USB charging/connector port ( )

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ USB charging port ( )

The USB port (3.0A) is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

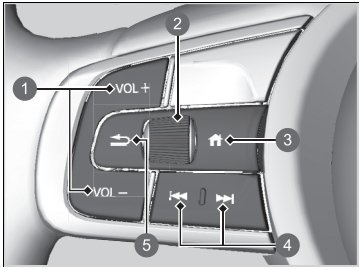
USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

Continued

Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

1. **VOL ⊞/VOL ⊟** (Volume) Buttons
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. (Home) Button
4. ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
5. (Back) Button

VOL ⊞/VOL ⊟ (Volume) Buttons
Press VOL ⊞: To increase the volume.
Press VOL ⊟: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
FM/AM/DAB*/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.

* Not available on all models

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Audio/Information Screen

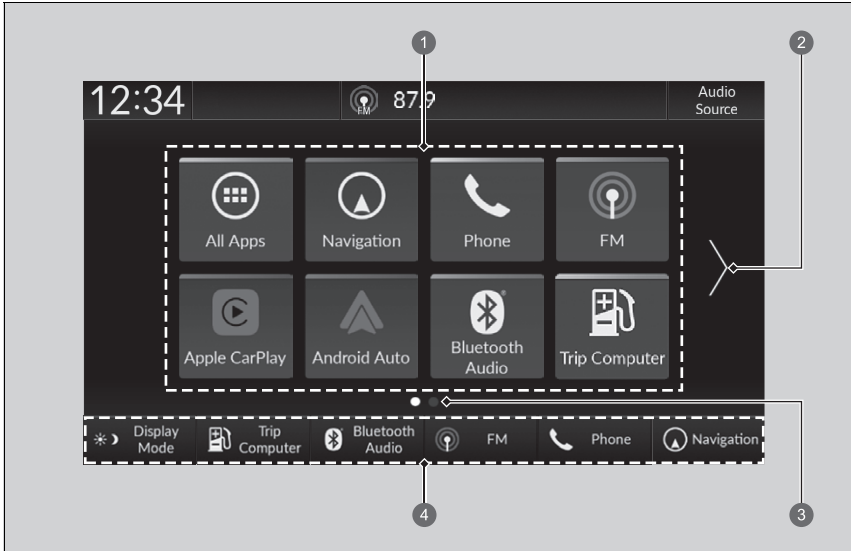
Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

App Shortcut Function



1. App Shortcut Icons
2. Arrow
3. Page Indicator
4. Mode Change Switches

To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Continued

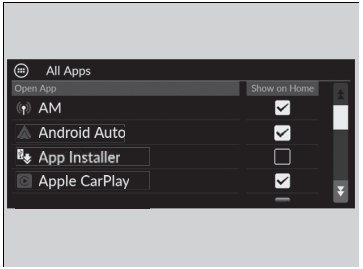
App Shortcut Function

The home screen can contain up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 359

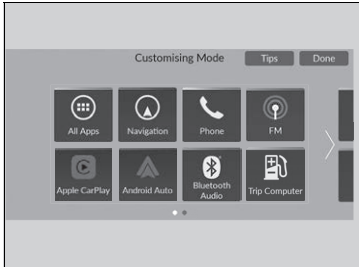
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 359

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

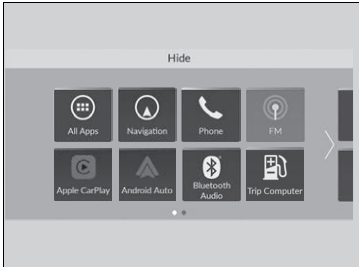
To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.

❶ Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

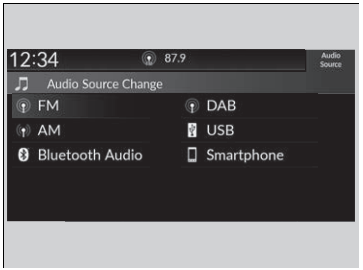
■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.

1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

❶ System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

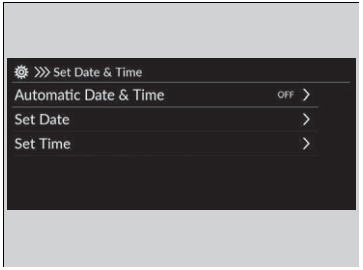
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

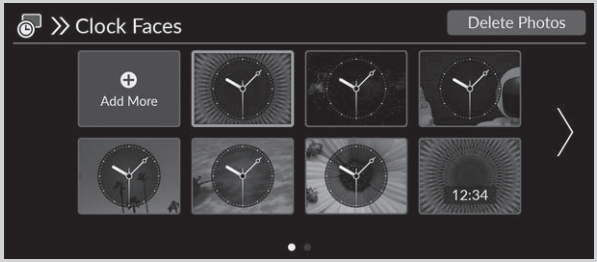
Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.
1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours, and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
➡ **System** P. 347

Clock Wallpaper Setup



Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Ports P. 295
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Clock**.
   ▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Clock Faces**.
6. Select **Add More**.
   ▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive is displayed on the list.
7. Select a desired picture to import.
   ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
8. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
9. Select **Transfer**.
   ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Continued

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
  Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

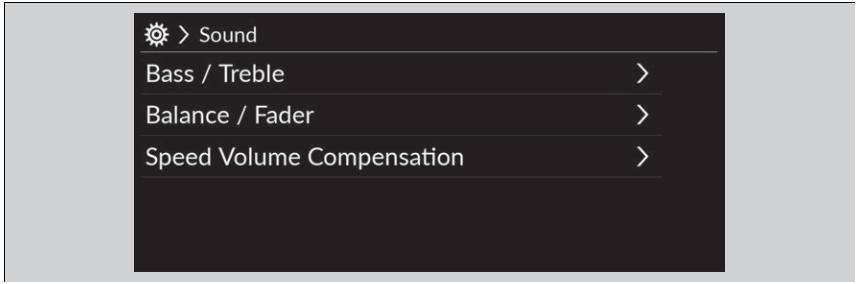
■ Select clock wallpaper

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen with which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ Delete clock wallpaper

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select an audio source.
2. Select **Sound**.
3. Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

Adjusting the Sound

The **Speed Volume Compensation** (SVC) adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Select (Display Mode).

▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.

▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.

▶ Select **Display OFF** to turn off the screen. To turn on the screen, press the HOME or BACK button.

▶ Select to switch between the Day and Night mode.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by swiping or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device.

Models with TCU

The audio system's firmware can be also updated with the telematics control unit (TCU) through the subscription-based service.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 304

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if user acceptance is needed for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that requires login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

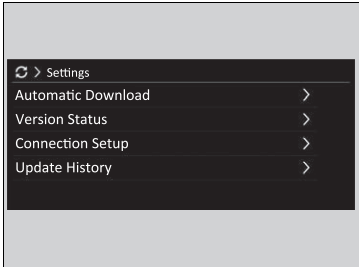
Your download will be cancelled if:
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You stop the engine when the battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

Continued

System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Update History**

Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Automatic Download**.

5. Select the access point, then select **Enable**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.

View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Version Status**.

■ Connection setup

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Connection Setup**.

5. Select **OK**.

6. Select an access point from the network list.

▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.

7. Enter the password.

▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.

8. Select **Connect**.

■ View the update history

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Update History**.

Continued

How to Update Wirelessly

Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
   ▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
   ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if user acceptance is needed for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   USB Ports P. 295
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

Update the audio system

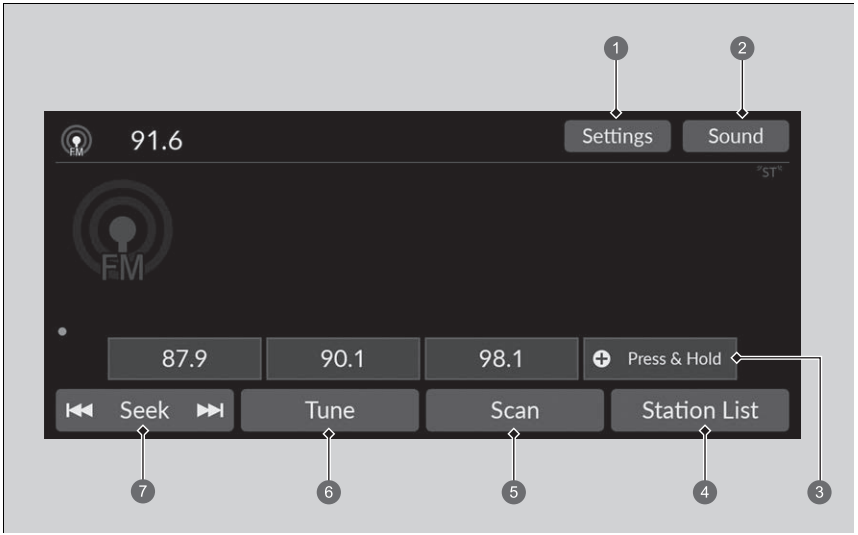
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   USB Ports P. 295
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Playing FM/AM Radio



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Station List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Tune Icon**
7. **Seek Icon**

Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Continued

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 296

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

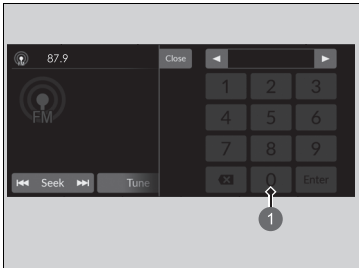
Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 309

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Allows use of the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Settings*

Changes the RDS settings.

1. Select **Settings**.

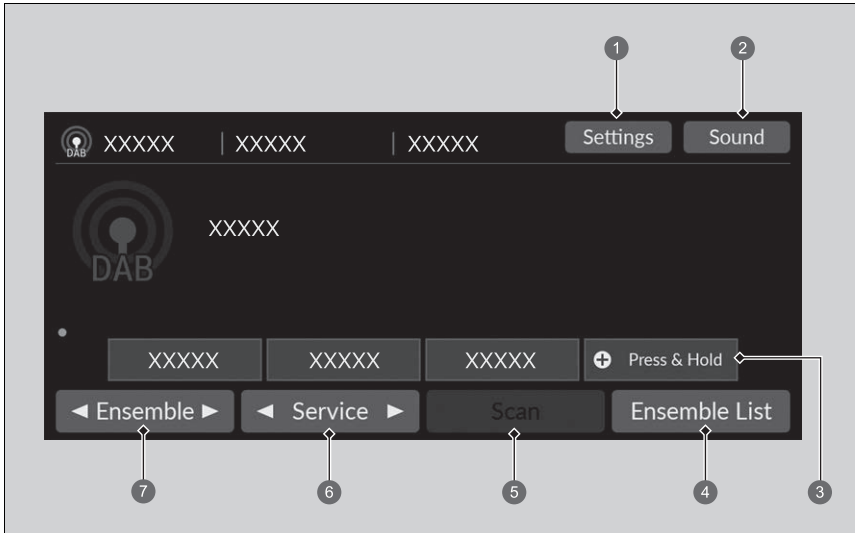
2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF***1)

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Ensemble List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Service Icons**
7. **Ensemble Icons**

* Not available on all models

Continued

Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.
To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.
1. Select ◀ or ▶ the tune ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

Service

Tunes the service component.
To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 296

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 309

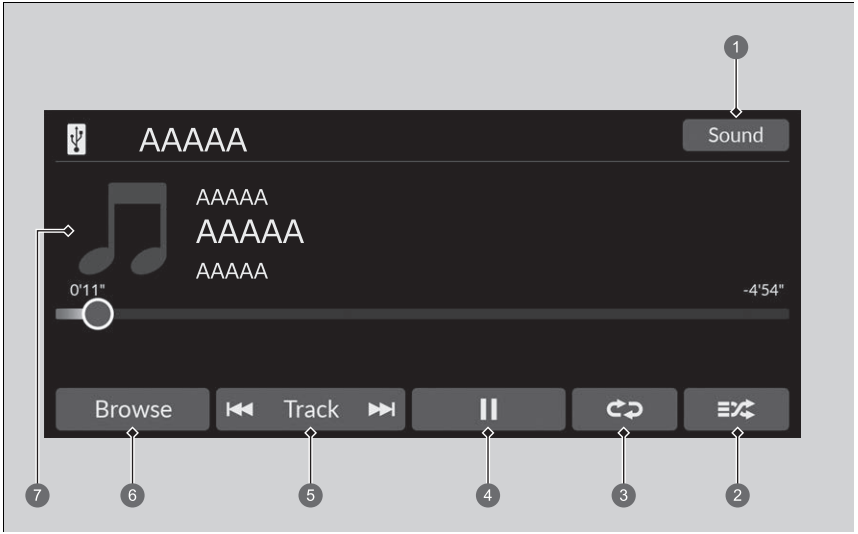
Settings

Changes the DAB settings.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select the option you want to change.

Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 295



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 379

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

Continued

How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Sound

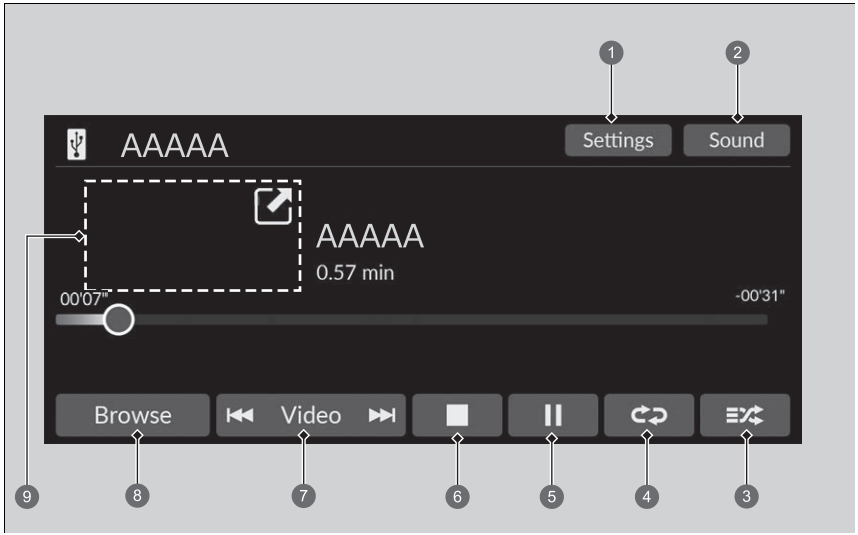
You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 309

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 295



1. **Settings Icon***
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Random Icon**
4. **Repeat Icon**
5. **Play/Pause Icon**
6. **Stop Icon***
7. **Track*/Video* Icons**
8. **Browse Icon**
9. **Cover Art*** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player*** (Playing a video)

Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System*** P. 380

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 379

* Not available on all models

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

When playing a video file*

(stop): Select to stop a file.

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

How to Change a File

Track*/Video* Icons

You can select or to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 309

Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Select **Settings**.

2. Select an option.

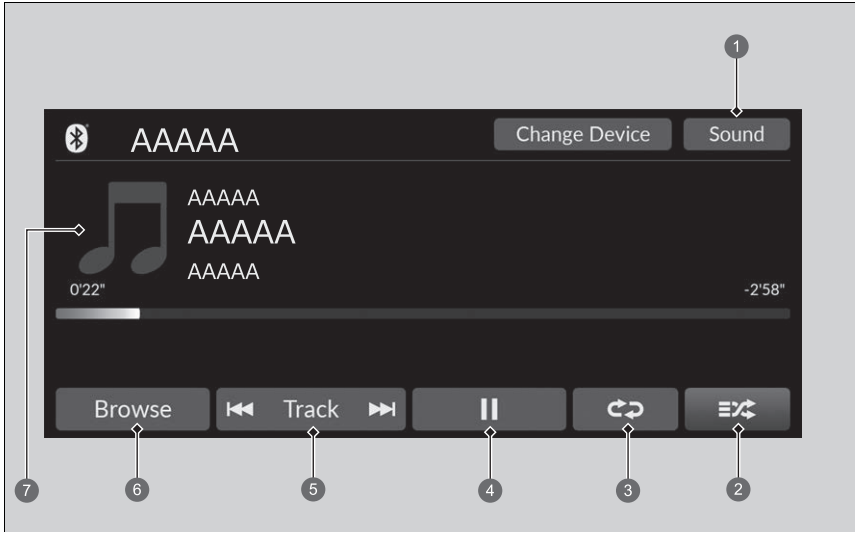
- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal***1**/Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right***1**/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Continued

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting ♫ from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat group): Repeats the current group.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 309

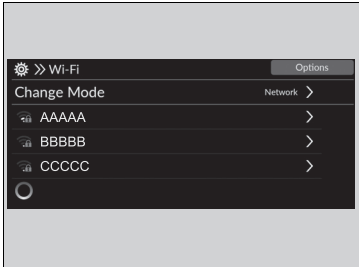
Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

■ Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
   ▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
   ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
   ➡ **System Updates** P. 311
8. Select **Connect**.

■ Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

1. Select **Change Mode**.
2. Select **OFF**.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Wi Fi® CERTIFIED

Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

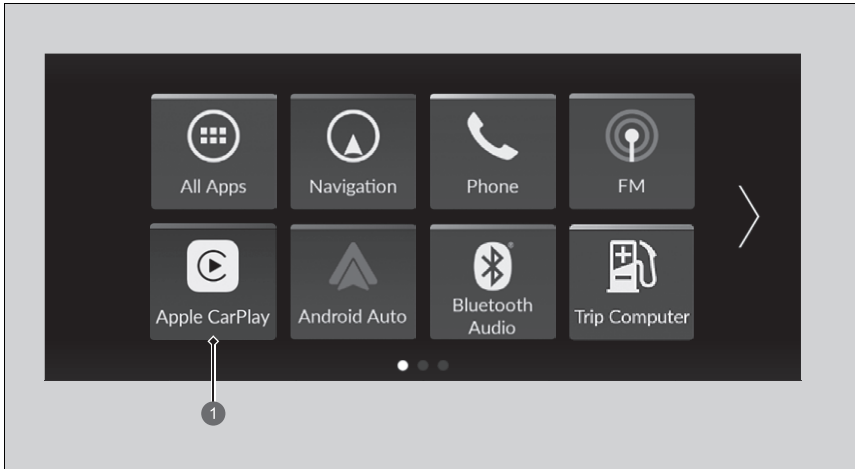
You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
➡ **Status Area** P. 304

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly and the **Apple CarPlay** icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 295



❶ **Apple CarPlay**

Apple CarPlay

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

➡ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 337

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Continued

Apple CarPlay Menu

The following items are only representative examples. More information on displayed applications can be found on your screen.

- **Phone**
  Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**
  Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
  Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

Only initialise Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings →
Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay →
Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Continued

Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
➡ **USB Ports** P. 295
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367
5. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

Wireless Apple CarPlay and Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Apple CarPlay and Hotspot at the same time, connect to Apple CarPlay with a USB cable.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.
   ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367
7. Select **Yes**.
   ▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.
   ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367
7. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
   ▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
8. Select **Connect**.
9. Select **Yes**.
   ▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Continued

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel

1. Press and hold the (talk) button on the steering wheel.

2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

3. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

4. Select **Connect**.

5. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.

2. Select **OK**.

▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

4. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

5. Select **Connect**.

6. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

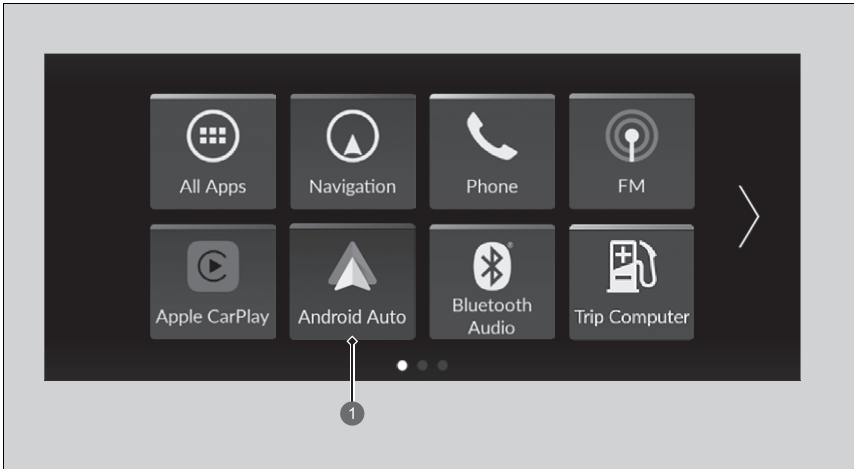
- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port and the **Android Auto** icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 295
➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 344



❶ **Android Auto**

Android Auto™

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

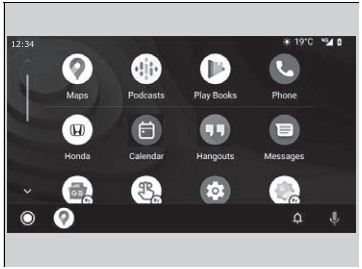
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Android Auto Menu

The following items are only representative examples. More information on displayed applications can be found on your screen.



- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

Continued

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB port using the USB cable.
   USB Ports P. 295
   ▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
   ▶ If you do not want to connect Android Auto, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

Only initialise Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:
- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

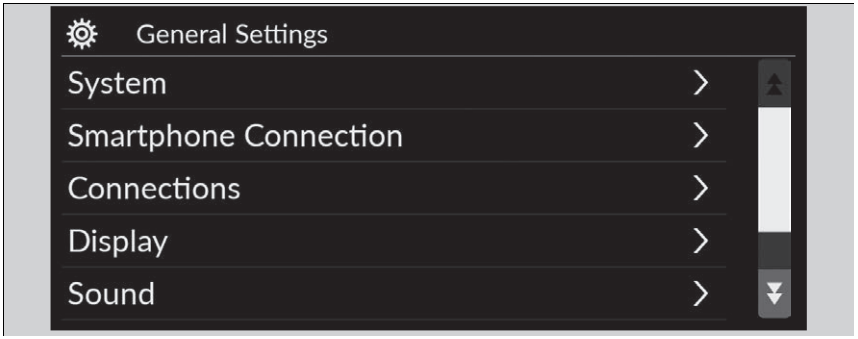
For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** ➔ P. 347
- **Smartphone Connection** ➔ P. 349
- **Connections** ➔ P. 350
- **Display** ➔ P. 351
- **Sound** ➔ P. 351
- **Camera** ➔ P. 352

Customized Features

When you customize settings:
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

■ System

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Select **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON***1/**OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 306	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 306	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON***1/**OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time*		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY***1/ **YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12-H***1/**24-H**

*1:Default Setting

Features

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	**English***1 Some Languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Normal***1
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Refuel Recommend		Turns the refuel recommend function on and off. ➡ **Refuel Recommend*** P. 390	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 359	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ Smartphone Connection

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367	—
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367	—

Continued

■ Connections

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network**[*1]/ **Smartphone**[*2]/**OFF**
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
	Setup	**Network SSID**	Sets the network name.	—
		Security	Displays the network security.	—
		Password	Sets required password to connect Wi-Fi device to the network.	—
		Wi-Fi Band	Displays the Wi-Fi band.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
		Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected.

■ Display

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode[*1]	Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode. ➡ **Display Setup** P. 310	—
Night Mode		
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

*1:Default Setting

■ Sound

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 309	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Balance / Fader			
Speed Volume Compensation			

Continued

■ Camera

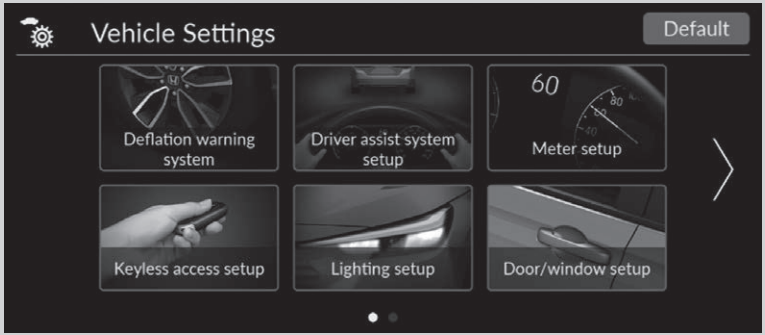
Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 538	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 538	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Deflation warning system*** P. 354
- **Driver assist system setup** P. 354
- **Meter setup** P. 356
- **Keyless access setup** P. 357
- **Lighting setup** P. 357
- **Door/window setup** P. 358

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

App Shortcut Function P. 299

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Deflation warning system*

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation warning system	Cancels/calibrates Deflation Warning System. ➡ **Deflation Warning System*** P. 428	**Calibrate/Cancel**

■ Driver assist system setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 436	**Far/Normal*1/Near**
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns audible notification on/off when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 465	**ON/OFF*1**
Lead car departure notification system*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. ➡ **Lead Car Departure Notification System*** P. 506	**Normal*1/Early/OFF**
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456	Singaporean models **Warning only/Early/Normal*1/Delayed** Except Singaporean models **Early/Normal/Delayed*1**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lane keep assist beep	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist* suspend alert beeps on and off. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485 ➡ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 497	**ON/OFF***1
Traffic sign recognition system display*	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 511	**Display***1**/None**
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning*	Enable over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 511	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➲ **Outside Temperature** P. 126	**-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C**
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➲ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 131, 151 ➲ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 133, 153	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset*1**
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➲ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 131, 151 ➲ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 133, 153	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset*1**
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning, and indicators.	**Max/Mid*1/Min**
Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➲ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 135	**ON*1/OFF**
Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	**ON*1/OFF**
Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
Fuel economy unit*	Selects the fuel consumption units.	**km/l*1/l/100km**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ Keyless access setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access beep volume	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	**Max***1**/Min**
Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ Lighting setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Turns auto high beam function on/off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➲ **Interior Lights** P. 262	**60sec/30sec***1**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➲ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 225	**60sec/30sec/15sec***1**/0sec**
Headlight integration with wipers	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➲ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 225	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

■ Door/window setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**ON/OFF***1
Lock presetting*	Changes the settings for the Lock Presetting function.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Keyless lock notification	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by remote. ➔ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 190	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

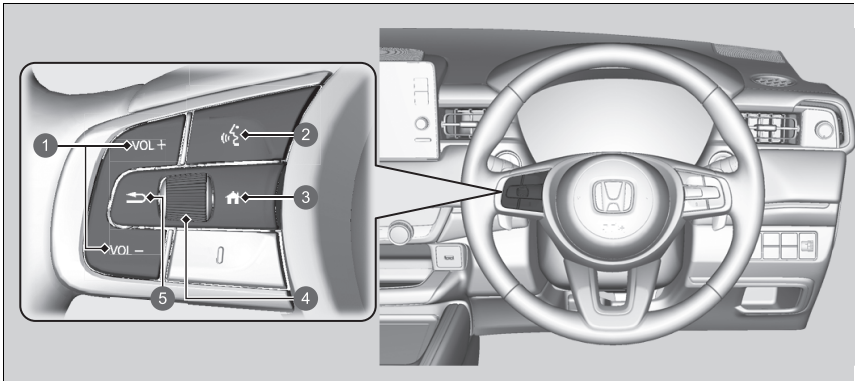
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system without handling your mobile phone.

■ HFT Buttons



❶ **VOL** ⊞/**VOL** ⊟ (Volume) Buttons
❷ (Talk) Button
❸ (Home) Button
❹ Left Selector Wheel
❺ (Back) Button

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 367

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 372

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Home) button: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 377

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

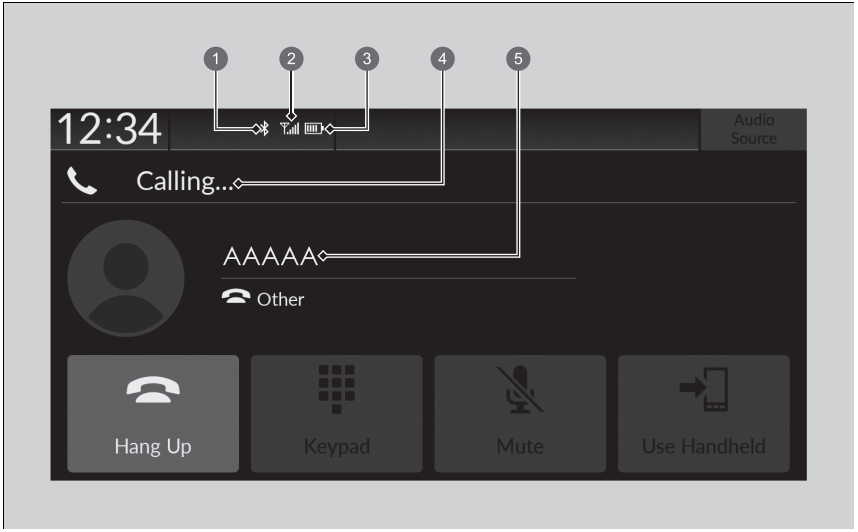
HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

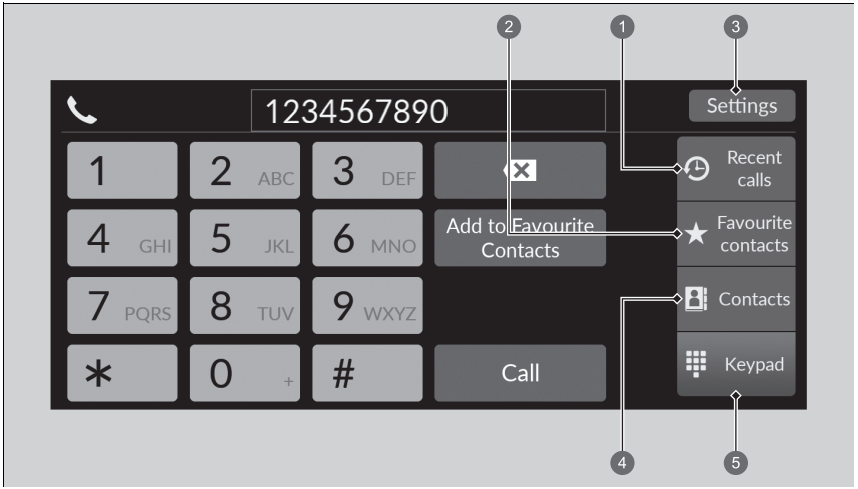
Only previously stored Favourite contacts with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 372

Continued

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



❶ **Recent calls**
❷ **Favourite contacts**
❸ **Settings**
❹ **Contacts**
❺ **Keypad**

HFT Menus

Some functions are limited while driving.

Recent calls: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.

➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 375

Favourite contacts: Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.

➡ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 375

Settings: Changes the phone settings.

➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 366

Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.

➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 376

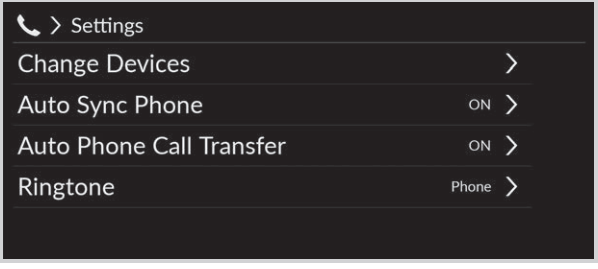
Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.

➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 376

Continued

Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Phone Setup P. 367

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls P. 370

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

Automatic Transferring P. 371

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

Ringtone P. 371

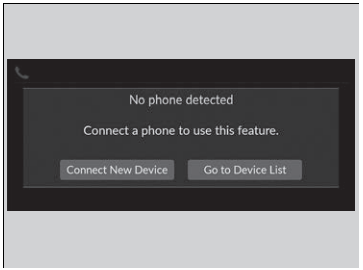
Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.

Continued



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone matches.
   This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   - ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   - ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
   - ▶ If you want to cancel the automatic *Bluetooth*® connection, uncheck all icons.
6. Select **Apply**.

■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

Continued

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

★	Pref		Fax
	Home		Car
	Mobile		Voice
	Work		Other
	Pager		

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

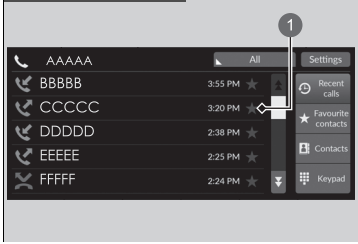
Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Continued

■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen



1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen

1 Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contacts

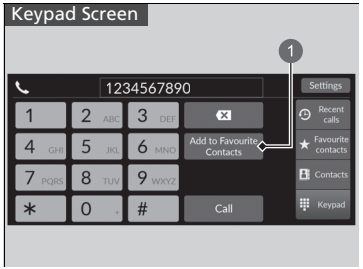
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

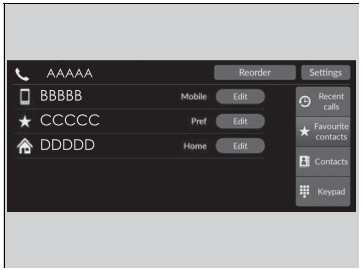
3. Select the star icon.

On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts**.
   - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
   - ▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.



❶ **Add to Favourite Contacts**



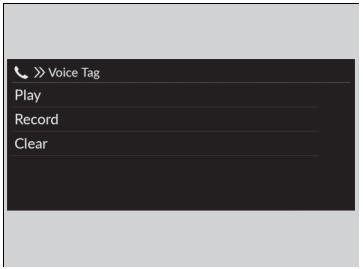
■ To edit a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Continued



■ To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Record**.
6. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Clear**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Favourite Contacts

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**.
   ▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
   ▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

Continued

Making a Call

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.
Press the button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled: Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
Favourite Contacts P. 372

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
   ▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
   ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can call a stored voice-tagged Favourite contacts using voice commands.

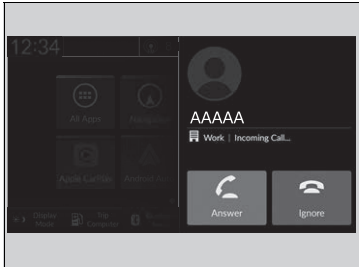
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 372

To make a call using a phone number

You can call a stored voice-tagged Favourite contacts using voice commands.

➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 372

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To pick up the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

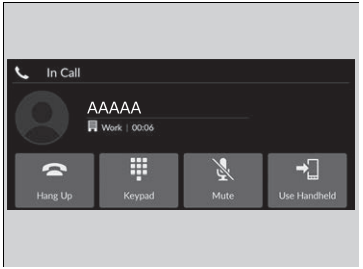
Call Waiting
Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

Continued

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
No response from device	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

* Not available on all models

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th to 7th generation)
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.

- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.
  MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

* Not available on all models

Recommended Devices

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

Continued

■ MKV File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ ASF/WMV File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv	
Compatible audio codec	WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Select **General Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **About**.
4. Select **Legal Information**.
5. Select **Licence**.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Licence Information

■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

■ Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.
Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Made for iPhone | iPod

Continued

■ MPEG

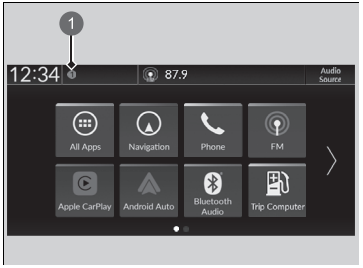
Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD (“MPEG-4 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

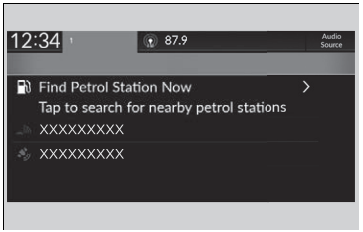
Refuel Recommend*

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for petrol stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.

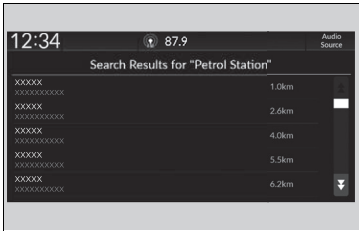


1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.

1 Notification Icon



3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now**.



4. Choose a petrol station from the search screen of the navigation system.
   ▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

Refuel Recommend*

You can turn the **Refuel Recommend** function on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the fuel level in the tank is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** or put more than 5 litres of petrol into the fuel tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select **OFF** in the settings for **Refuel Recommend**.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

* Not available on all models

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 392
Towing a Trailer 396
Off-road Guidelines 397
When Driving
Starting the Engine 399
Precautions While Driving 405
Continuously Variable Transmission 407
Models without drive mode switch
Shifting 408
Models with drive mode switch
Shifting 412
ECON Mode* 416
Drive Mode Switch* 417
Hill Descent Control System 420
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 422
Agile Handling Assist 424
Taiwanese models
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ... 425
Except Taiwanese models
Deflation Warning System* 428
Honda SENSING* 433
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ... 436
Low Speed Braking Control* 450
Road Departure Mitigation System 456
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 465
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 485
Australian and Fijian models
Traffic Jam Assist 497
Lead Car Departure Notification System* ... 506
Traffic Sign Recognition System* 511
Front Wide View Camera 516
Sonar Sensors* 518
Braking 519
Parking Your Vehicle 530
Multi-View Rear Camera* 538
Refueling 540
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 544
Turbo Engine Vehicle* 545

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 593
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 249
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 258
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Mirrors** P. 245
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 244

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.
➡ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 231

Models with automatic headlight adjuster

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

* Not available on all models

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 49
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➔ **Indicators** P. 106

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➡ **Specifications** P. 686

For some models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➡ **Specifications** P. 686

Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement; however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
  Load Limit P. 395
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Off-road Guidelines

WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- **Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.**
- **Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.**

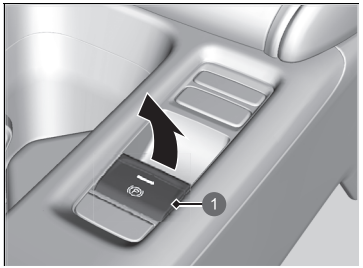
Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 40
Precautions While Driving P. 405

Avoiding Trouble

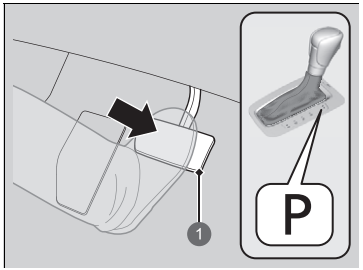
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognise these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can’t clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don’t try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Starting the Engine



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



1 Brake Pedal

2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

Starting the Engine

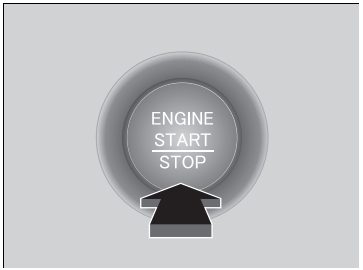
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Continued



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 652

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

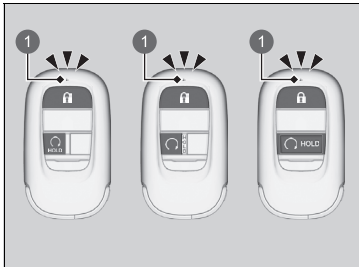
The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 212

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

■ To start the engine



Press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⏲] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

❶ LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.

If the engine starts successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

* Not available on all models

Continued

If the engine does not start, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

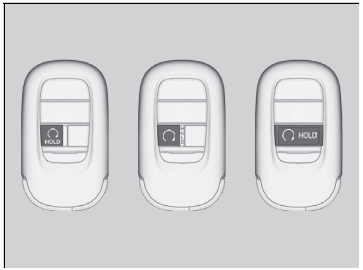
Remote Engine Start*

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

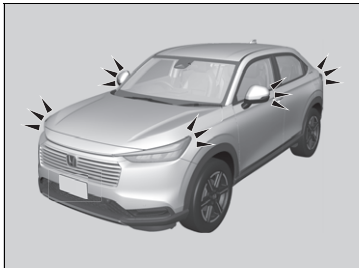
- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.
  Settings* P. 140, 157
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than [P].
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit* malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The battery charge is too low.

* Not available on all models

■ To stop the engine



Press and hold the button for one second.



If the engine stops successfully, the exterior lights flash once.

When the remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The engine will not stop.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start*

The engine may stop while it is running if:
- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:
- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.*
- The climate control system is activated in previously selected mode.*

When it is cold outside:
- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

➡ **Rear Demister Button** P. 242

* Not available on all models

Continued

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the keyless remote

Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into D. Select R when reversing.
2. With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
   ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
   ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 519

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into D, S* when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to P.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the keyless remote

The engine stops when the transmission is taken out of P before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.

In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Continued

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

➔ **Important Handling Information** P. 40
➔ **Precautions While Driving** P. 405

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Continuously Variable Transmission

■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

■ Kickdown

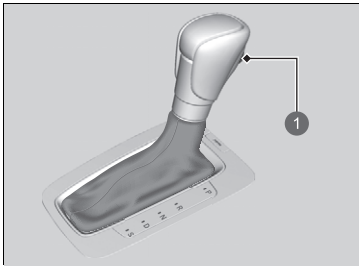
Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed.
Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Models without drive mode switch

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions



1 Release Button

P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used:
- For normal driving.
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.*

S Drive(S)
Used:
- For better acceleration.
- To increase engine braking.
- When going up or down hills.
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.*

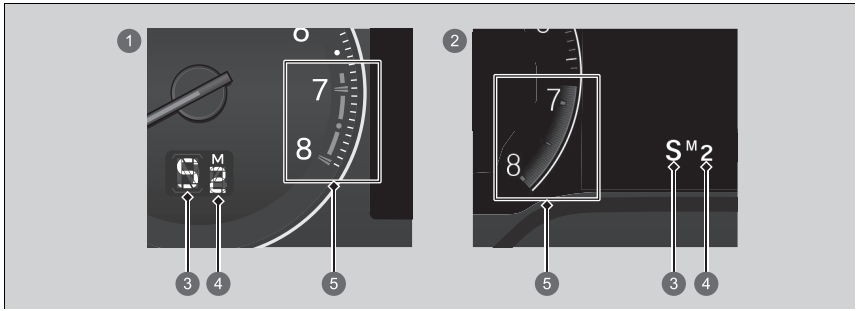
Shift positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

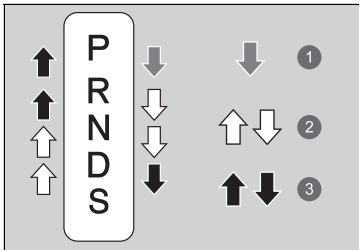
The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

* Not available on all models

Shift Operation



1. Except Australian, Fijian and Singaporean models
2. Australian, Fijian and Singaporean models
3. Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
4. **M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*
5. Tachometer Red Zone



1. Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
2. Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
3. Press the shift lever release button and shift.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift position from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode*

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the transmission is in D:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
Pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds will cancel this mode.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the transmission is in S:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from S to D. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

* Not available on all models

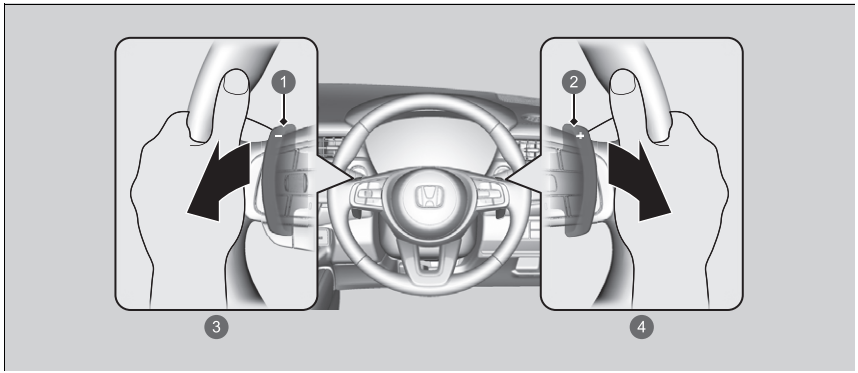
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode*

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



❶ [−]Paddle Shifter (Shift down)
❷ [+]Paddle Shifter (Shift up)
❸ Downshifting when pulling the [−]paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)
❹ Upshifting when pulling the [+]paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

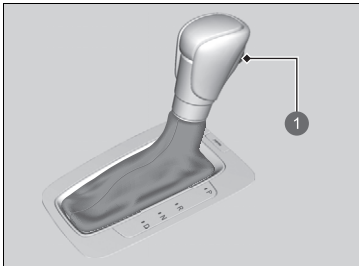
The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

Models with drive mode switch

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions



❶ Release Button

P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used:

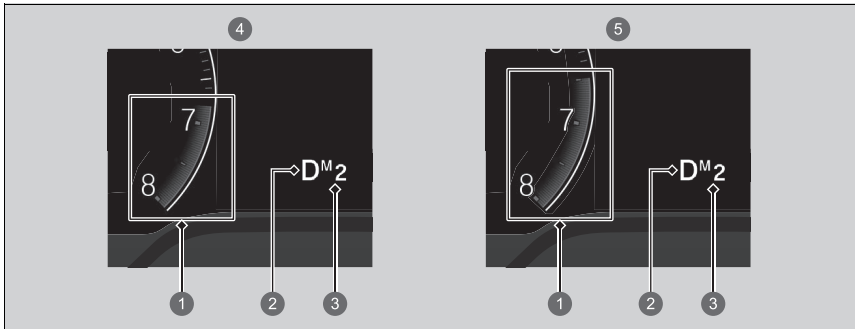
- For normal driving.
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode.
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in SPORT mode).

Shift positions

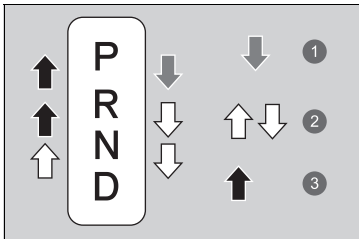
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Operation



❶ Tachometer red zone
❷ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❸ **M** (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator
❹ Except Malaysian models
❺ Malaysian models



❶ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❷ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❸ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Continued

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift position from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (–30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the transmission is in D:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
You can cancel this mode by pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the transmission is in D with SPORT mode:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, use the drive mode switch to select other than SPORT mode or pull the + paddle shifter for a few seconds. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

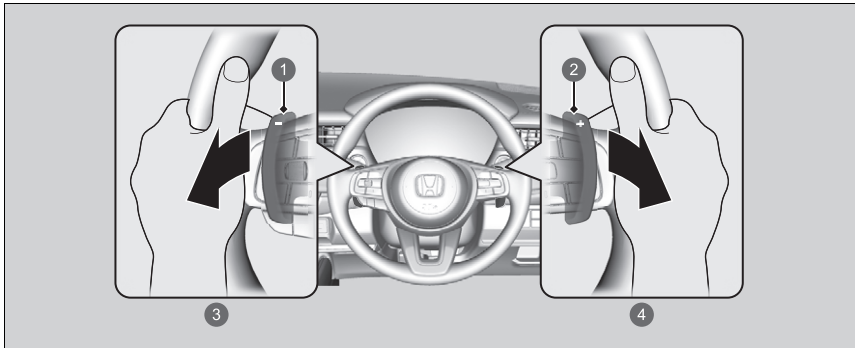
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



❶ [−]Paddle Shifter (Shift down)
❷ [+]Paddle Shifter (Shift up)
❸ Downshifting when pulling the [−]paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)
❹ Upshifting when pulling the [+]paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

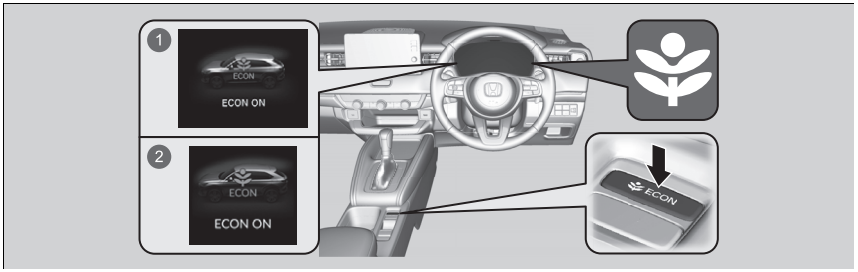
Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

ECON Mode*

The ECON mode limits output to facilitate fuel-efficient driving.

▶ To turn the ECON mode ON and OFF, press the **ECON** button.



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter

ECON Mode*

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuation.

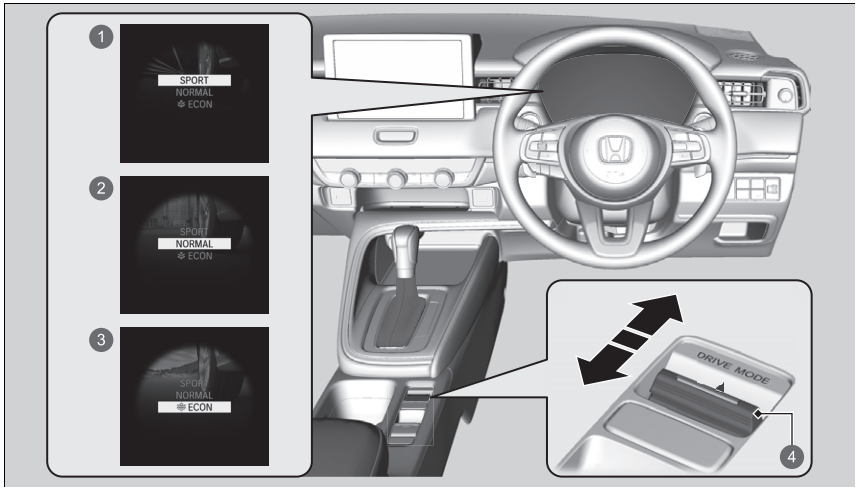
The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.
If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

* Not available on all models

Drive Mode Switch*

Press the drive mode switch to select the appropriate mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.

Selecting the Drive Mode



1. **SPORT** Mode
2. **NORMAL** Mode
3. **ECON** Mode
4. Drive Mode Switch

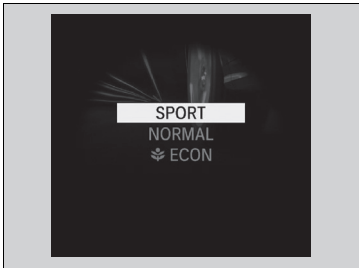
Drive Mode Switch*

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.
If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot select any other mode.

* Not available on all models

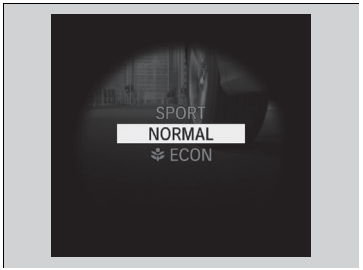
Continued

SPORT Mode



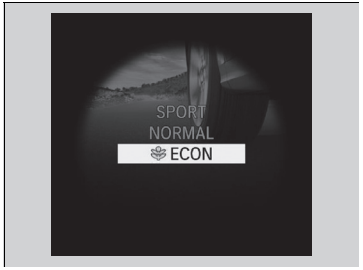
Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

NORMAL Mode



Optimizes the balance between operability and comfort.

ECON Mode



Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Mode	Next Mode
SPORT	**NORMAL**
NORMAL	**NORMAL**
ECON	**ECON**

ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle will be slower to accelerate.

Hill Descent Control System

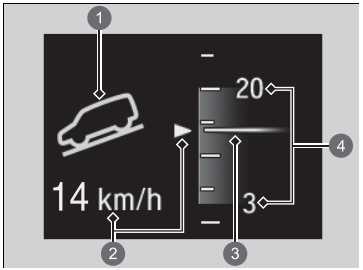
When driving down hills where engine braking is not enough to decelerate the vehicle, this system helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed without needing to depress the brake pedal.

■ Hill Descent Control Operating Conditions

The system operates under the following conditions.

- Driving at a speed between about 3-20 km/h.
- Driving downhill.
- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not depressed.

■ Driver Information Interface Display



❶ The system's operating status
- Green: Activated
- White: Standby

❷ Vehicle speed display
- White: Set speed
- Grey: Current speed
  - ▶ Blinks when the vehicle speed is above the operating speed.

❸ Current speed

❹ Operating range of set speed

Hill Descent Control System

⚠WARNING

Hill descent control cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed in every situation.

When driving down a very steep hill or on slippery road surfaces, the vehicle may not be able to maintain the vehicle speed and could cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

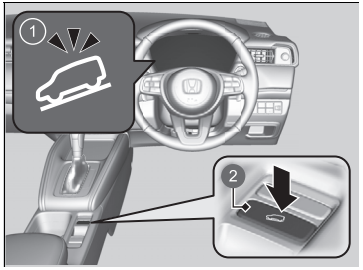
Since Hill Descent Control is not designed to increase the limits of vehicle performance, the driver must always be aware of road surface conditions and drive safely.

The brake lights automatically come on while the system is in operation.

The system may not operate when driving down a gentle slope. Check the Hill Descent Control indicator to see if the system is in operation.

The system may activate even when not driving downhill, such as when the vehicle leans while driving over uneven surfaces.

How to Operate Hill Descent Control



❶ Hill Descent Control System Indicator
❷ (Hill Descent Control) Button

To turn the system on

When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h, press the button to turn the system on.

▶ The system goes into standby mode, and the Hill Descent Control System indicator (white) comes on.

When all the working conditions are met, the system activates, and the vehicle begins to maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill.

▶ The Hill Descent Control System indicator (green) comes on when operating.

To adjust the set speed

Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed within the operating range. The vehicle speed at which you release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will be the set speed.

To turn the system off

Press the button to turn the system off.

How to Operate Hill Descent Control

Using the system repeatedly for a long time may cause the brakes to heat up and make the system go into standby mode temporarily.

Hill Descent Control is turned off every time you turn the engine off, even if it was turned on the last time you drove the vehicle.

The pedals may vibrate or you may hear the system working when in operation.

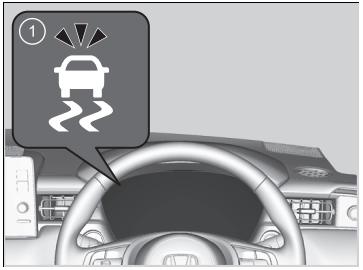
To turn the system off

When the vehicle speed is about 60 km/h or more, the system turns off automatically.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



❶ VSA System Indicator

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

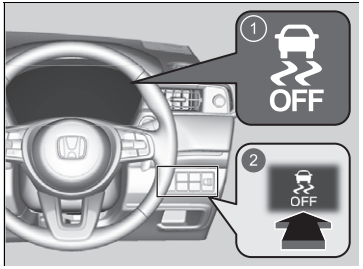
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber)*, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

VSA On and Off



❶ VSA **OFF** Indicator
❷ Button

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

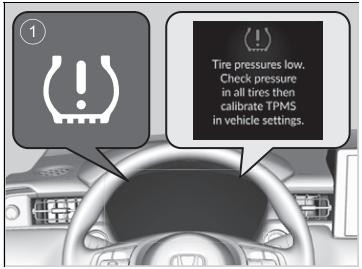
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Taiwanese models

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator

■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  ➡ **Checking Tyres** P. 593

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Continued

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

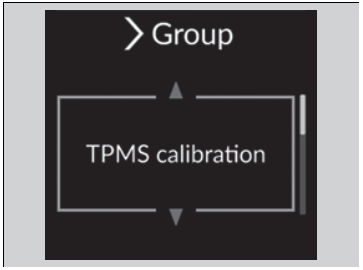
The TPMS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 593

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/TPMS, and safety support (amber) may come on along with a message in the gauge after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

You can calibrate the system from the settings on the driver information interface.

1. Press the button to select (Settings), then press the left selector wheel.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock & vehicle settings**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel until **TPMS calibration** appears on the display.
4. Press the left selector wheel.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains are used.

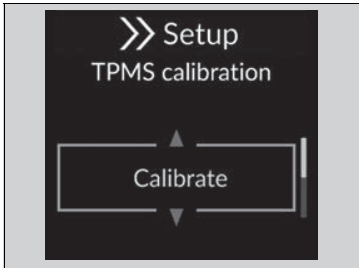
TPMS Calibration

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



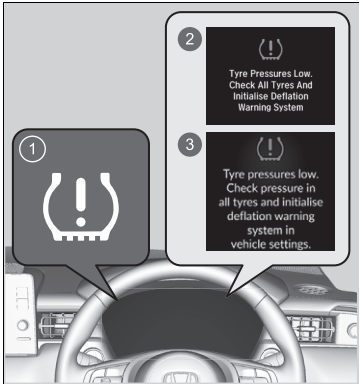
5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **Calibrate**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ **Calibration started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration failed to start** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Except Taiwanese models

Deflation Warning System*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

Deflation Warning System*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 593

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains* are used.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tyre is used.*
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration*/initialisation*.
- Tyre chains* are used.

* Not available on all models

Deflation Warning System Calibration*/Initialisation*

You must start deflation warning system calibration*/initialisation* every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating*/initialising* the deflation warning system:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  Checking Tyres P. 593

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System*

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Deflation Warning System Calibration*/Initialisation*

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains* are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Australian and Fijian models

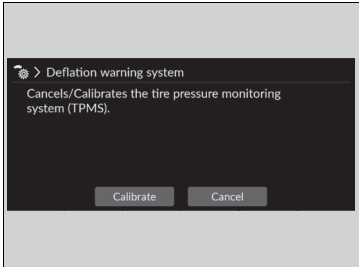
You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Press the HOME button.

3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.

4. Select **Deflation warning system**.



5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Except Australian and Fijian models

You can calibrate the system from the settings on the driver information interface.

1. Press the button to select (Settings), then press the left selector wheel.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock & vehicle settings**, then press the left selector wheel.

3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Deflation warning system** appears on the display.
4. Press the left selector wheel.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

Continued

5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **Initialise**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

■ The functions that do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➔ P. 436
- Low Speed Braking Control* ➔ P. 450
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➔ P. 456
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ➔ P. 506
- Traffic Sign Recognition System* ➔ P. 511
- Parking Sensor System* ➔ P. 532
- Auto High-Beam* ➔ P. 232

■ The functions that require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➔ P. 465
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➔ P. 485

Australian and Fijian models

- Traffic Jam Assist ➔ P. 497

Honda SENSING*

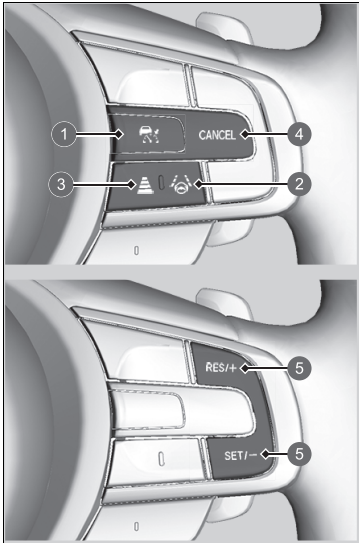
Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) /Traffic Jam Assist*



❶ **Button**
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

❷ **LKAS Button**
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*.
Or press to cancel these systems.

❸ **Interval Button**
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

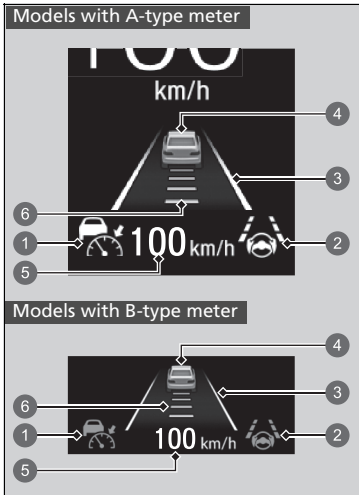
❹ **CANCEL Button**
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❺ **RES/+ and SET/– Buttons**
Press **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **SET/–** button to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

 * Not available on all models

Gauge Content

You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) and Traffic Jam Assist*.



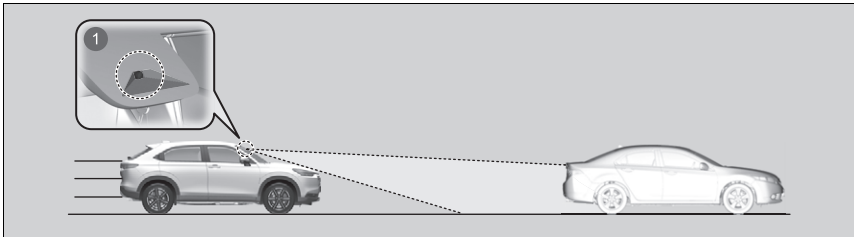
1. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Green: The system is on.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
2. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is ready to be activated.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Green: The system is operating.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
3. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
   - White Lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
   - Green Lines: The system is operating.
   - Amber Lines: Lane departure is detected.
4. Indicates whether or not ACC with Low Speed Follow detected the vehicle ahead.
5. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
   - White: Set Vehicle Speed
   - Grey: Prior Set Speed
6. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

* Not available on all models

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).
The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

■ How the system works



❶ The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 441

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

How the system works

The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 441

The CMBS activates when:

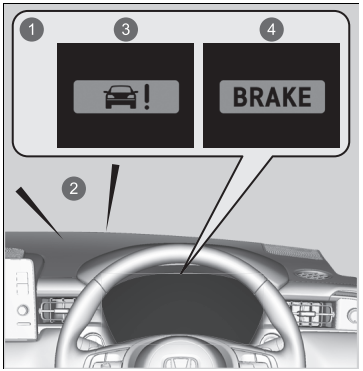
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn left*1/right*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
  - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
  - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

Continued

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

❶ Visual Alerts
❷ Audible Alert
❸ Except Filipino, Taiwanese, and Latin American models
❹ Filipino, Taiwanese, and Latin American models

You can change the distance (**Far**/**Normal**/**Near**)* (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**)* between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

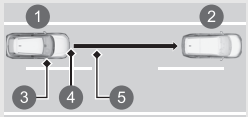
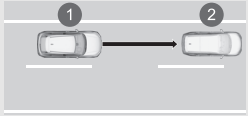
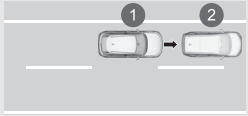
➔ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

When in **Far*** or **Long***, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near*** or **Short***, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

* Not available on all models

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The Visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ➔ **Settings*** P. 140, 157 ➔ **Customized Features** P. 346	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ **Far*** or **Long***
❹ **Normal**
❺ **Near*** or **Short***

* Not available on all models

Continued

CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 128, 149
➡ **Safety Support** P. 138, 155

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 441

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

* Not available on all models

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Continued

■ Vehicle conditions

- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

* Not available on all models

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

Continued

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.

- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*1/right*2 at an intersection etc.)*3.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

*1 : Left-hand Drive Type
*2 : Right-hand Drive Type
*3 : When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*1/right*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

Continued

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

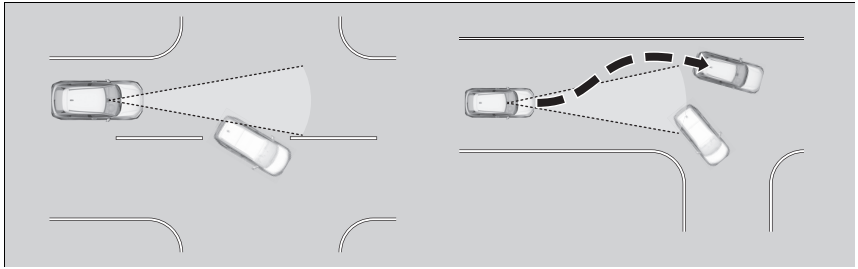
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

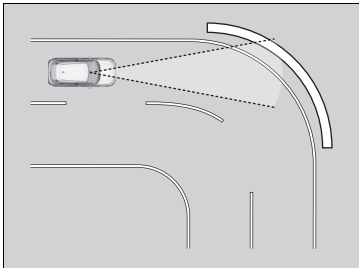
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

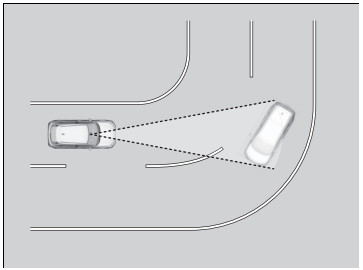


Continued

- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Low Speed Braking Control*

Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers, this system can detect if there is danger of a potential collision with a wall or other obstacle during normal driving or when the accelerator pedal is depressed with too much force. The system then assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact through Low Speed Brake function and/or Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control.

Low Speed Braking Control*

⚠WARNING

The Low Speed Braking Control System cannot avoid all collisions and may not reduce damage in each situation where the accelerator is mistakenly or aggressively pressed. Overreliance on the system may result in a collision with serious injury or death. Always check your surroundings, your shift position, and your pedal use. Driver remains responsible for safely operating the vehicle.

If the Low Speed Braking Control activates in a situation where you do not want automatic brake application (such as when the vehicle is between two railroad crossing gates), simply press the brake pedal to deactivate the system and then continue to drive as intended.

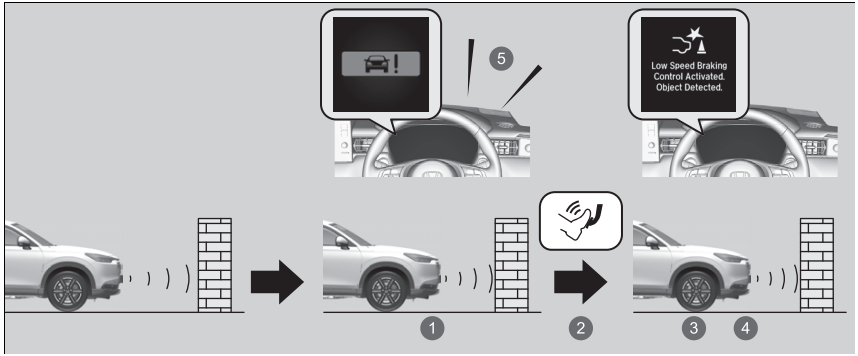
If the system is activated by curbs/parking curbs or level differences on the road and you are unable to park or clear them, turn the system off.

* Not available on all models

How the System Works

Low Speed Brake function

The Low Speed Brake function provides a visual and audible alert when the vehicle is moving between approximately 2 and 10 km/h and there is the possibility of a collision with a detected wall or other obstacles, as well as providing assistance with braking.



1. The vehicle applies brake
2. Driver depresses brake pedal
3. Stop
4. Release brake after maintaining stationary position
5. Audible Alert

If only the rear sensors are turned off using the parking sensor system, the Low Speed Brake function will not work when reversing.

Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 537

Low Speed Braking Control*

For directions on the proper handling of the sonar sensors, please refer to the following page.

Sonar Sensors* P. 518

The vehicle will release the brake and start moving a few seconds after the system is activated. To keep the vehicle stopped, keep the brake pedal depressed or put the transmission into P.

In order to prevent the system from activating when not needed, always turn it off during vehicle maintenance, when loading on ships, lorries, and so on, or when using a chassis dynamometer or free rollers for inspection.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the Low Speed Braking Control System may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

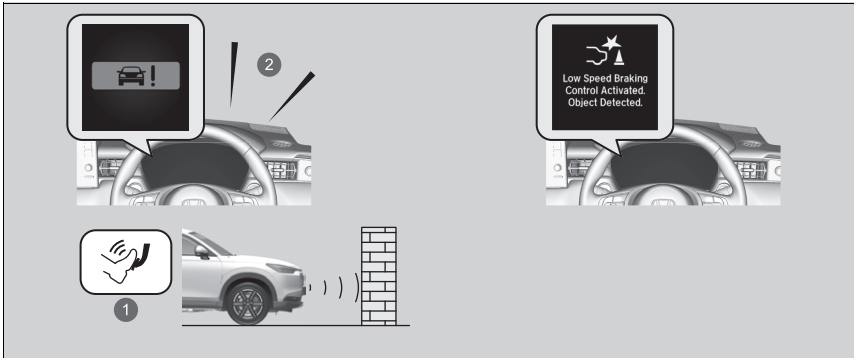
Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 537

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control

When the vehicle is stopped or moving at less than 10 km/h and there is an obstacle such as a wall detected near the front or back of the vehicle, the system will inform you with a visual and audible alert if the accelerator pedal is depressed more than necessary. At the same time, the system will prevent sudden forward or backwards movement by limiting the output of the engine, then Low Speed Brake function will activate when you get closer to the obstacle.



❶ Accidental depression of the accelerator/Limiting the output of the engine
❷ Audible Alert

Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control will not activate in the following situations.
When moving forward:
When on a steep slope or the shift position is in P, R, or N.
When reversing:
When on a steep slope or the shift position is in a position other than R.

If only the rear sensors are turned off using the parking sensor system, the Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control will not working when reversing.

➔ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 537

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 128
➔ **Safety Support** P. 138

The system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

System On and Off

The Low Speed Braking Control system may temporarily turn off after reconnecting the battery. The system will automatically turn ON after the vehicle has been moving at over 20 km/h for some time.
If the system does not turn on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

Conditions for Cancellation

Conditions for Collision Mitigation Throttle Control, and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control:

- When the accelerator is no longer depressed.
- When the accelerator is depressed for approximately four seconds.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.

Conditions for Low Speed Brake function cancellation:

- A certain amount of time has passed since activation.

Low Speed Braking Control System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

Examples of obstacles the sonar sensor cannot detect

- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.
- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.
- Obstacles that are not perpendicular to the ground.

Conditions for Cancellation

After Low Speed Brake and Collision Mitigation Throttle Control have activated once, they will not activate again for the same obstacle.
It can be activated again after driving for some time after the last activation.

Low Speed Brake and (Rear) Collision Mitigation Throttle Control activate separately when moving forward and reversing. (For example, if it activates when moving forward, it can be activated again immediately if reversing.)
However, if Low Speed Brake has been activated, in order to activate Collision Mitigation Throttle Control again, it is necessary to drive for a certain amount of time.

■ Examples of situations where the sonar sensor cannot detect obstacles

- The sonar sensor is dirty (covered by snow, water, mud, etc.).
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

■ Examples of other cases where the system may not work correctly

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage or suspension modifications.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- Bad weather conditions such as heavy rain, fog, snow, sandstorms, etc.
- The ambient temperature/humidity is too high or low.
- When going down a very steep slope.
- When driving off-road such as on dirt, grass or rocks.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.

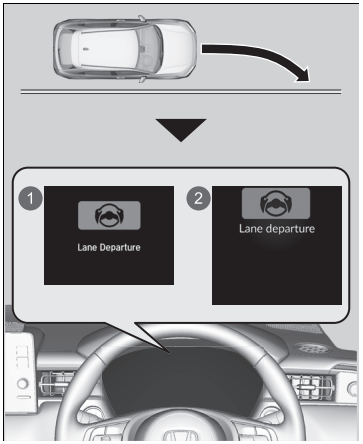
■ Situations where the system may activate even without risk of a collision

- When passing through short or narrow gates.
- When driving on uneven surfaces, grassy areas, or places with steps.
- When a sloped pillar or wall is protruding from a high position.
- When there are obstacles next to the road.
- When driving towards flags, curtains, tree branches, railroad crossing bars, etc.
- When driving on flooded roads.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1.

■ How the System Works



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter

The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1. If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1 when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.*1
In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you to remain within the detected lane.
➡ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

As a visual alert, **Lane departure***/**Lane Departure*** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.*1
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.*1
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed, or road conditions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

*1: Australian and Fijian models
* Not available on all models

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or an oncoming vehicle*1.

Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

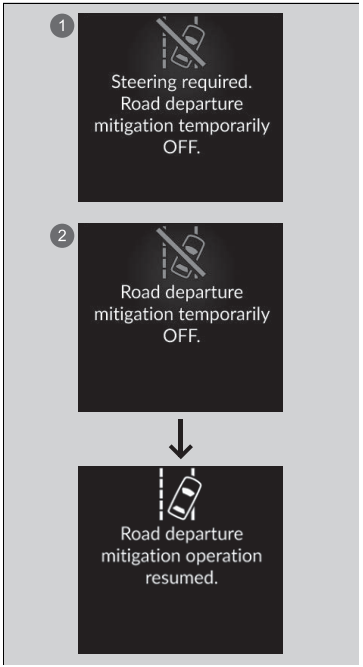
Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations P. 461

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

*1: Australian and Fijian models

Continued

Models with B-type meter



❶ Taiwanese, Filipino, and Latin American models
❷ Except Taiwanese, Filipino, and Latin American models

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or oncoming vehicle*1.

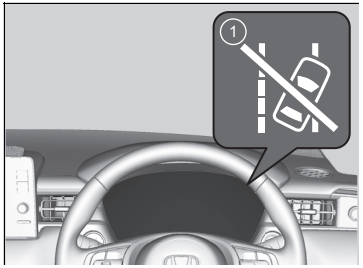
➔ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter

*1: Australian and Fijian models

* Not available on all models

Models with A-type meter



❶ Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

Australian and Fijian models
- The lane markings are white (yellow).
  The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
  ▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel road shoulder.
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

Except Australian and Fijian models
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

Continued

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and road departure mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.
➡ **Indicators** P. 106

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 128, 149
➡ **Safety Support** P. 138, 155

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

Except Australian and Fijian models

When you have selected **Warning Only***/**Warning only***, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

➡ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or an oncoming vehicle*1 under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.*1

*1: Australian and Fijian models

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles*1

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

*1: Australian and Fijian models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation*1

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision*1

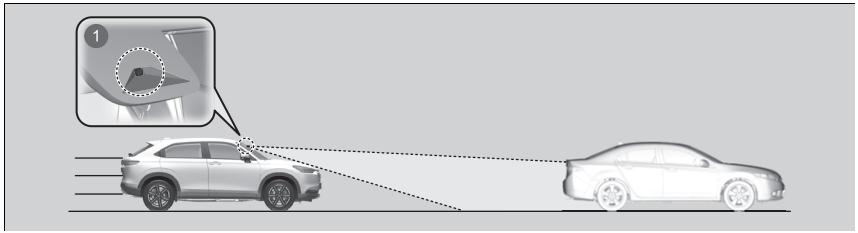
The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

*1: Australian and Fijian models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.
When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D or S*.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

WARNING

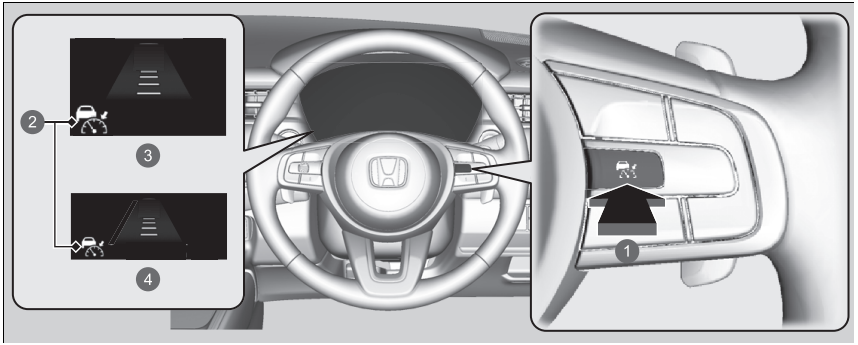
ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **The Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

❸ Models with A-type meter

❹ Models with B-type meter

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

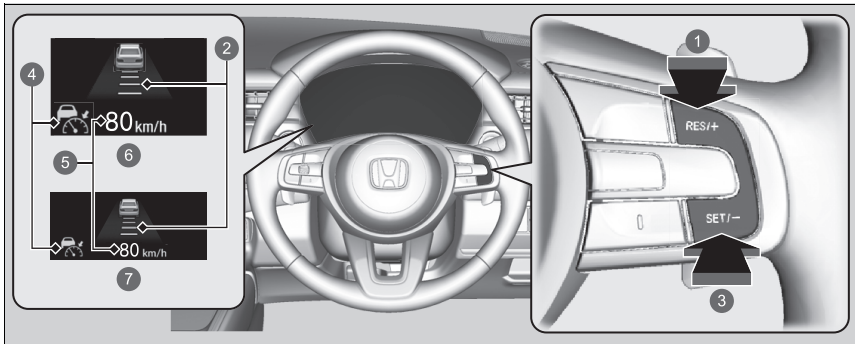
A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

To Set the Vehicle Speed



1. **RES/+** Button
   Press and release
2. On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
3. **SET/–** Button
   Press and release
4. Indicator (Green)
5. Set Vehicle Speed (White)
6. Models with A-type meter
7. Models with B-type meter

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 475

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow:
Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

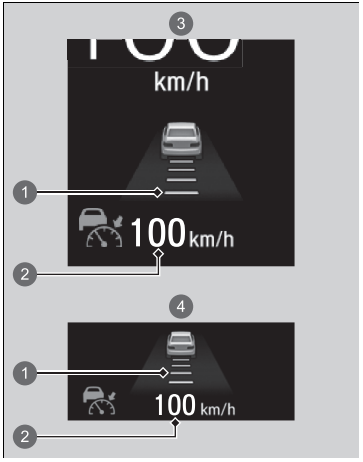
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

Continued

When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** buttons when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ Models with A-type meter
❹ Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.

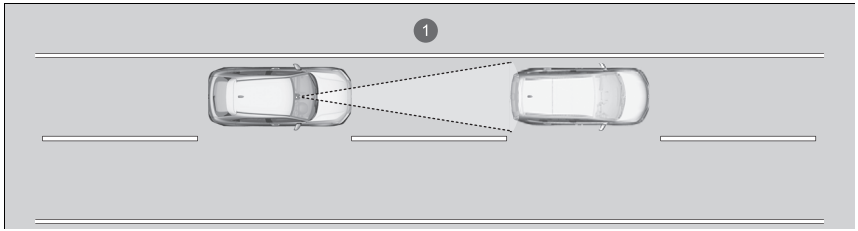
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

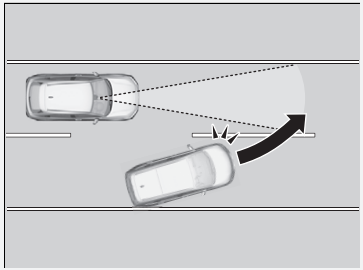
To Set or Change Following-interval P. 480



1 ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

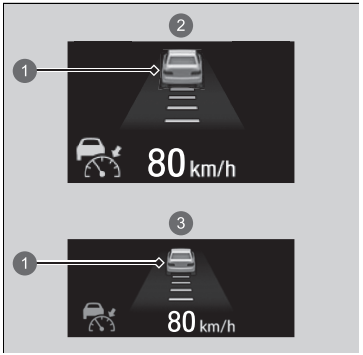
When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.

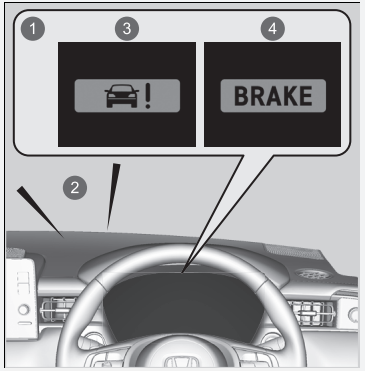
Continued



❶ A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

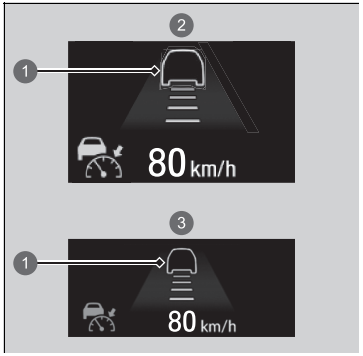
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the front wide view camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation



❶ Visual Alerts
❷ Audible Alert
❸ Except Filipino, Taiwanese, and Latin American models
❹ Filipino, Taiwanese, and Latin American models

■ There is no vehicle ahead



❶ A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.
➔ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

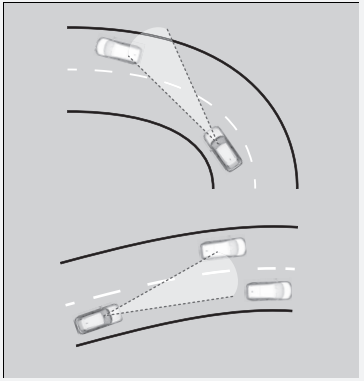
Limitations
You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.
➔ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 475

* Not available on all models

Continued

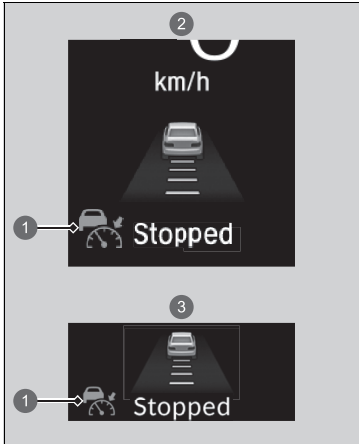
When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

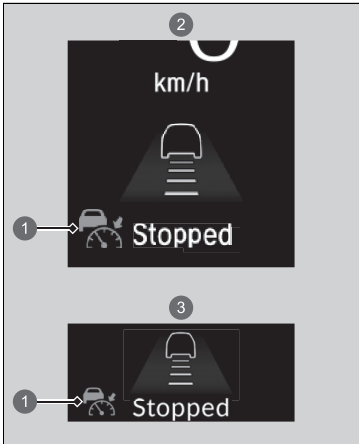
■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the previously set speed.

❶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

Continued



1. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)
2. Models with A-type meter
3. Models with B-type meter

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

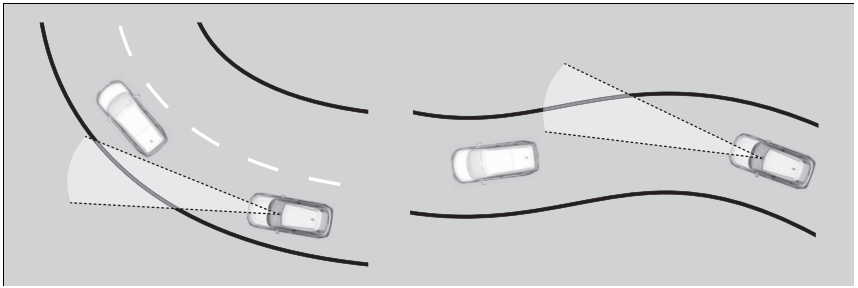
■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

■ Examples of conditions under which the front wide view camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.

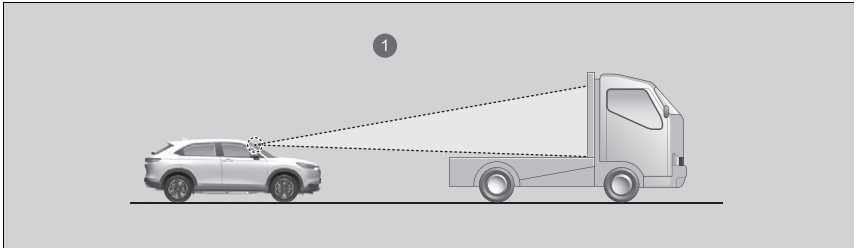
Latin American models

- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.

Except Latin American models

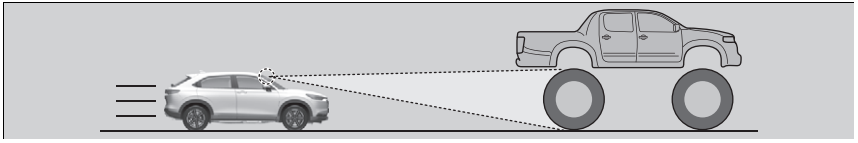
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.

Continued



1 Front wide view camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

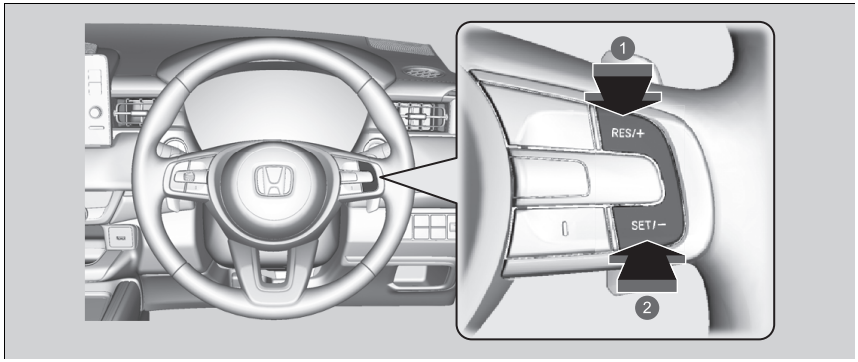
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

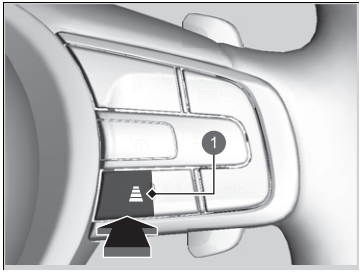
Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **SET/–** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval



1 Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		43.9 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

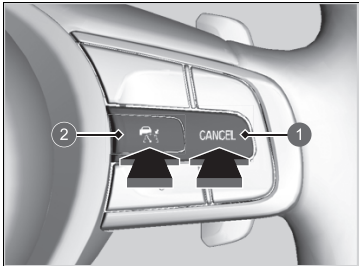
When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

Continued

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

To Cancel



❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.
When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.
When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.
If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

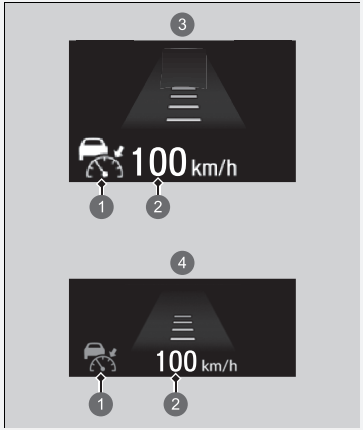
The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, CMBS, or Low Speed Braking Control* is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

To Cancel



1. Indicator (White)
2. Prior Set Speed (Grey)
3. Models with A-type meter
4. Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

Continued

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

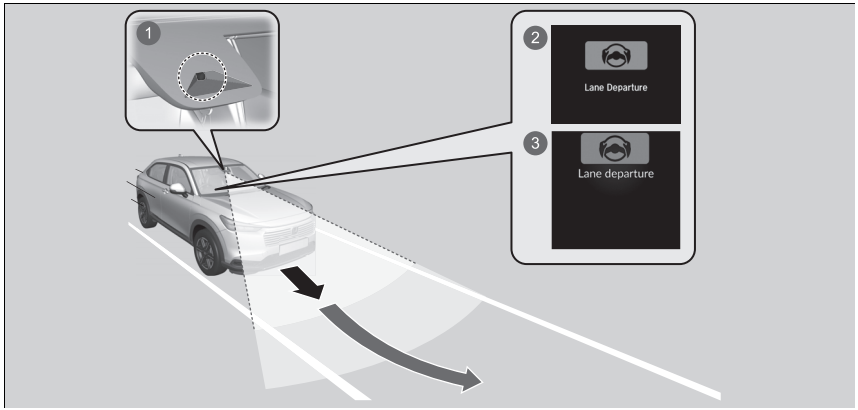
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



❶ Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

Continued

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

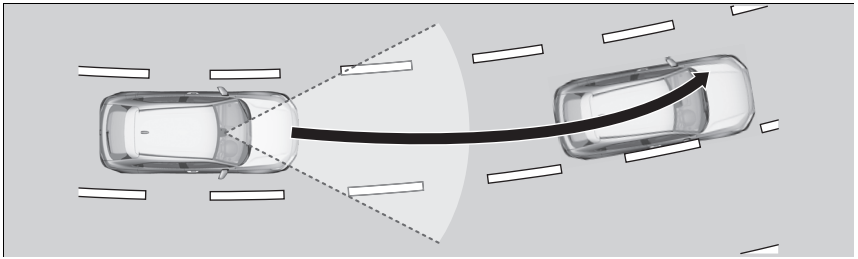
You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
➡ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 493

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

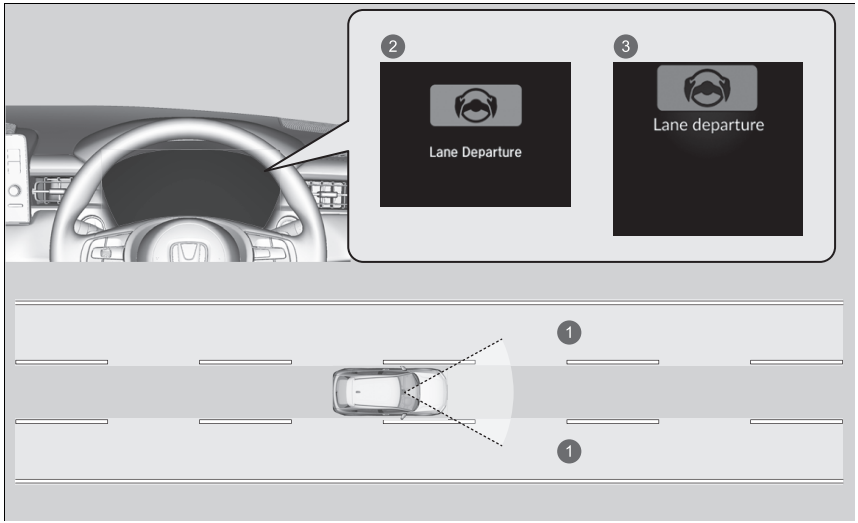


Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



❶ Warning Area
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

Continued

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.

When the System can be Used

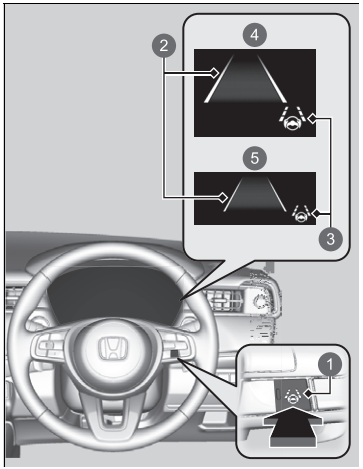
If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

- Always keep the windscreen around the front wide view camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the front wide view camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the front wide view camera.

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

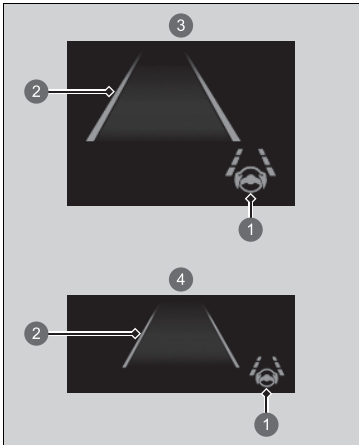
■ How to activate the system



❶ LKAS Button
❷ White lines
❸ LKAS indicator (white)
❹ Models with A-type meter
❺ Models with B-type meter

1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

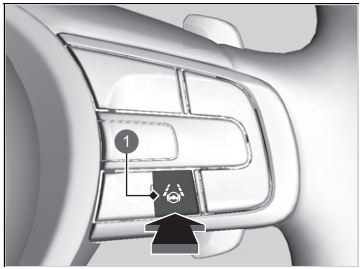
Continued



❶ LKAS indicator (green)
❷ Green lines
❸ Models with A-type meter
❹ Models with B-type meter

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



Press the LKAS button.

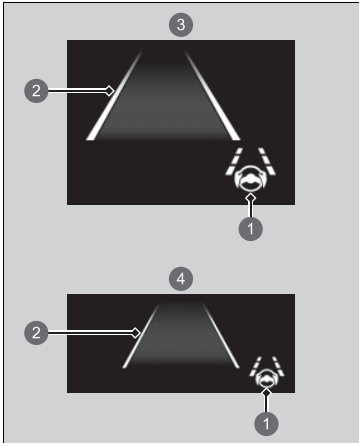
The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

1 LKAS Button

Continued

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, the lane lines on the gauge change to white, and the beeper sounds (if activated).



❶ LKAS indicator (white)
❷ White lines
❸ Models with A-type meter
❹ Models with B-type meter

Except Australian and Fijian models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.

All models

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the screen, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The front wide view camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the front wide view camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

➔ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

* Not available on all models

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

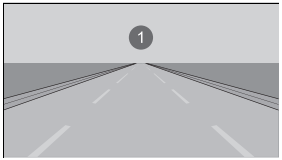
■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

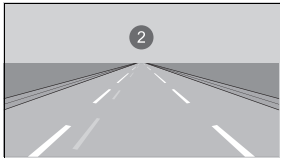
Continued

■ Roadway conditions

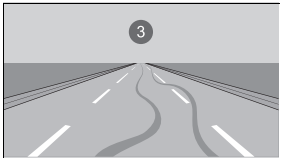
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines

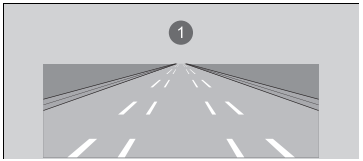


❷ Duplicate lines



❸ Tyre tracks

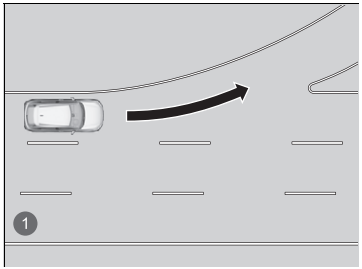
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

Continued

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

* Not available on all models

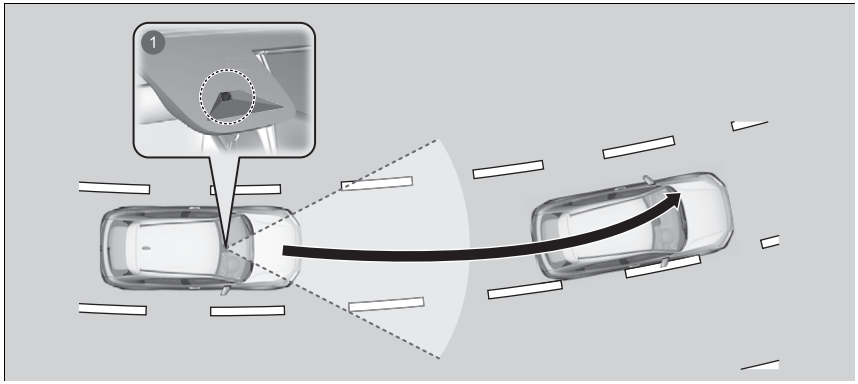
Australian and Fijian models

Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help to keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



1 Front Wide View Camera
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.

Continued

Traffic Jam Assist

Important Safety Reminders
Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

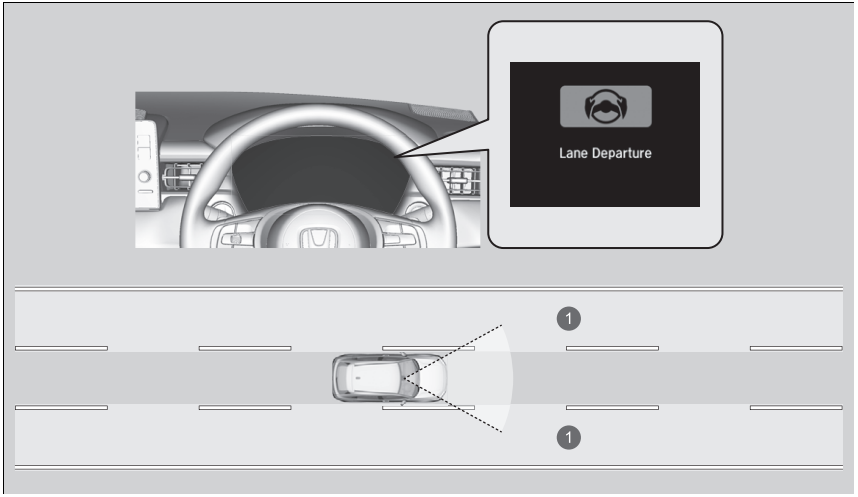
The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:
➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 502

When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.
The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



❶ Warning Area

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:

- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in D or S.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
  ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Refer to the following page for proper handling of the LKAS:

➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485

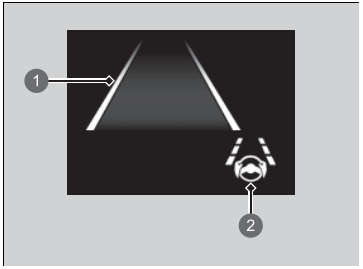
Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:

➡ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) /Traffic Jam Assist*** P. 434
➡ **Gauge Content** P. 435

* Not available on all models

Continued

How Traffic Jam Assist Works



1 Green Lines
2 LKAS indicator (green)

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

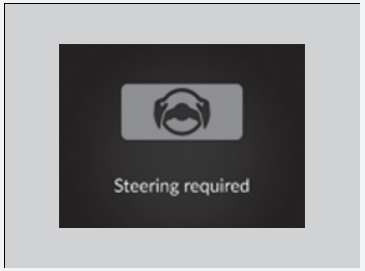
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 502

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the LKAS button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

- The temperature of the front wide view camera is too high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the front wide view camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Upon cancellation, the lane lines will disappear from the screen and the beeper may sound.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane keep assist beep** on the audio/ information screen.

Customized Features P. 346

Continued

Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations

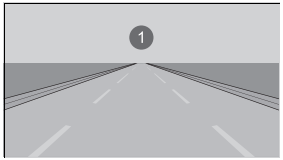
The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and Traffic Jam Assist may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

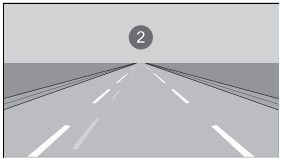
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ Roadway conditions

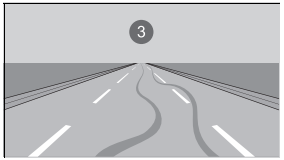
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines

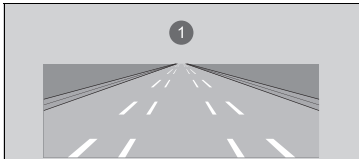


❷ Duplicate lines



❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

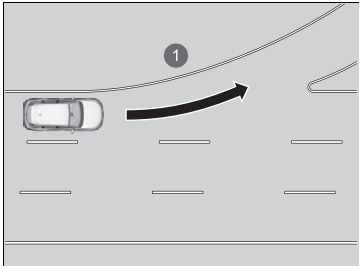


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Continued

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



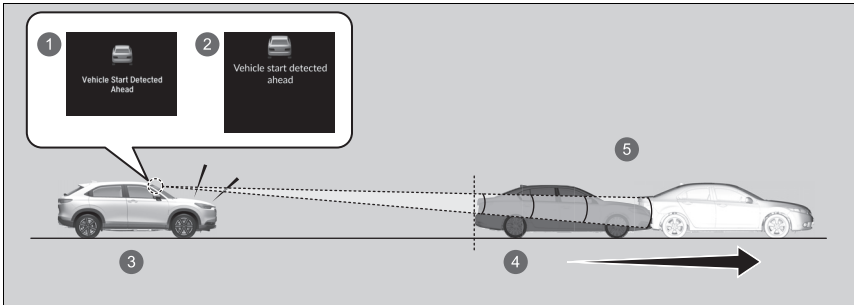
1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



1. Models with A-type meter
2. Models with B-type meter
3. When stopped
4. Vehicle ahead is stopped
5. Vehicle ahead starts moving

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

⚠WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera located behind the rearview mirror.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

* Not available on all models

How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

When the shift position is in D or S*

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

➡ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

➡ **Settings*** P. 140, 157
➡ **Customized Features** P. 346

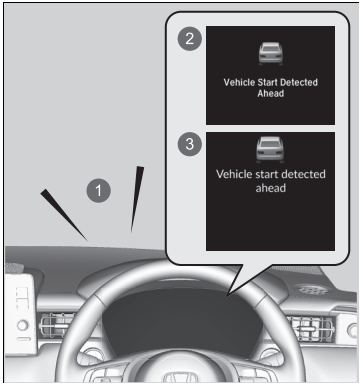
The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (amber) is on.

➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 465

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

❶ Audible Alert
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Examples of conditions under which the front wide view camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

■ Examples of other limitations on system operation

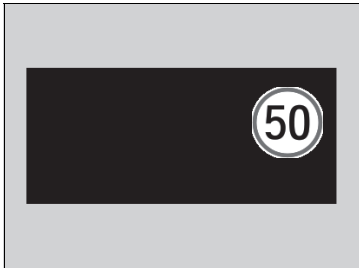
- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera.
Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

* Not available on all models

Continued

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 516

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 346

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.
➔ **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 513

 * Not available on all models

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Continued

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, (amber) appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

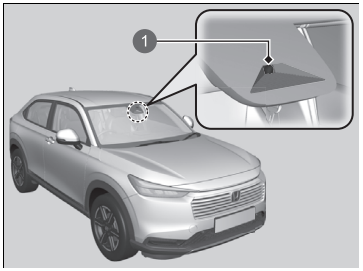
▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

Front Wide View Camera

The front wide view camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Traffic Jam Assist*, Lead Car Departure Notification System*, Traffic Sign Recognition System* and Auto High-Beam* is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Front Wide View Camera Location and Handling Tips



❶ Front Wide View Camera

This front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the front wide view camera housing. Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera. Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High*/Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high*** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the front wide view camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the front wide view camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist System Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen Or Poor Viewing Condition.*/Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.*/Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.*** message appears:

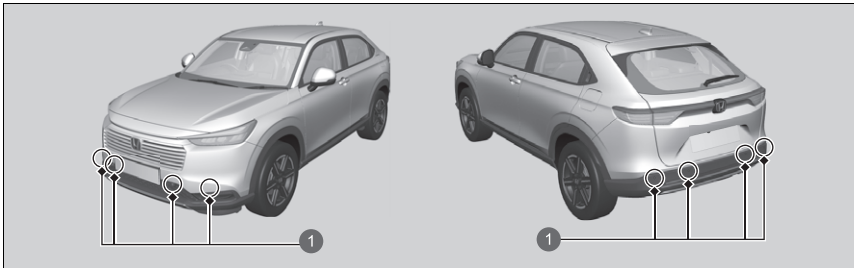
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.
  Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

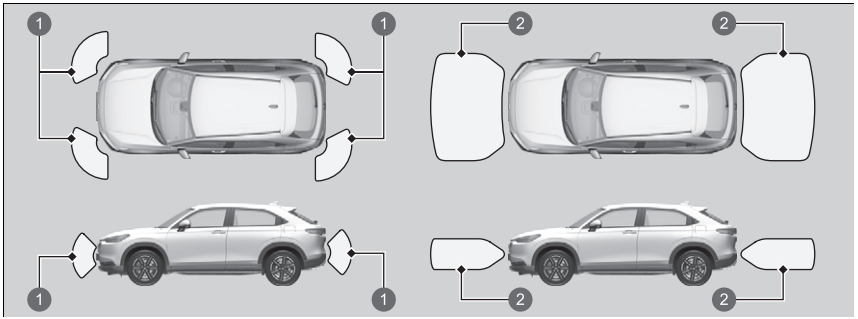
Sonar Sensors*

■ Location and range of sensors

The sonar sensors are situated in the front and rear bumpers.



❶ Sonar Sensors



❶ Corner Sensor Sonar Range
❷ Centre Sensor Sonar Range

Sonar Sensors*

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:
- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Consult with a dealer if:
- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.

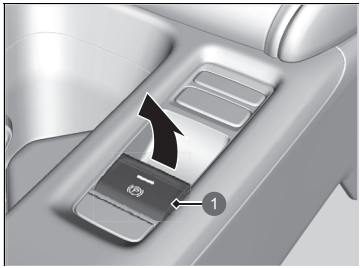
In the following cases, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in a frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

* Not available on all models

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



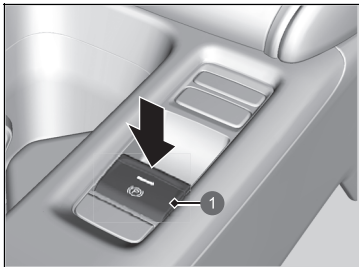
❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Continued

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.
If the Battery Is Dead P. 655

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

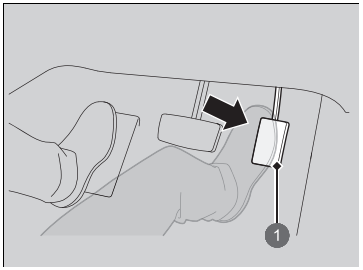
If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

➡ **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 521

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.
Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



❶ Accelerator Pedal

Gently depress the accelerator pedal.
When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off, while brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off, while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
▶ Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* and the automatic brake hold system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 528
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 527

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

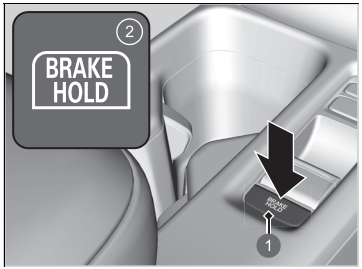
Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

Turning on the system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and start the engine.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠WARNING

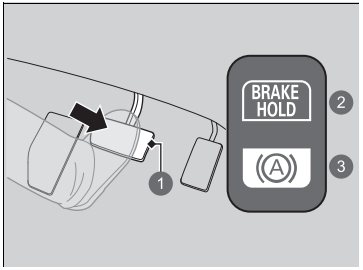
Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

Continued

■ Activating the system



1. Brake Pedal
2. Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator On
3. Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift position must not be in P or R.

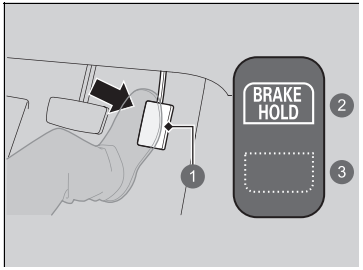
- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.
Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



❶ Accelerator Pedal
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator On
❸ Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Goes Off

Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Automatic Brake Hold

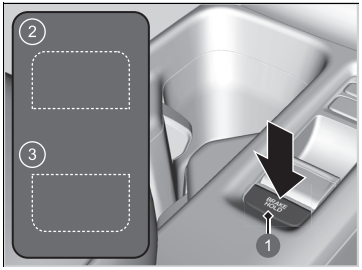
While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

➡ **When Stopped** P. 530

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Continued

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Goes Off
❸ Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the engine or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off.
In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the engine is restarted, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE
The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

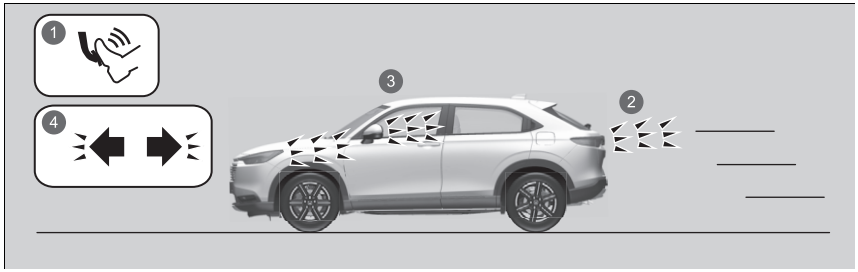
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



❶ Hard Braking
❷ Brake Lights Come On
❸ Hazard Warning Lights Flash
❹ Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the shift position to P.
4. Turn off the engine.
   ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

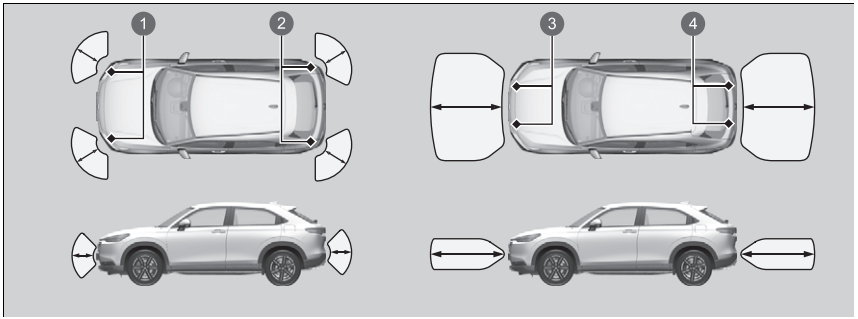
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The Sensor Location and Range



❶ Front Corner Sensors*
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors*
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

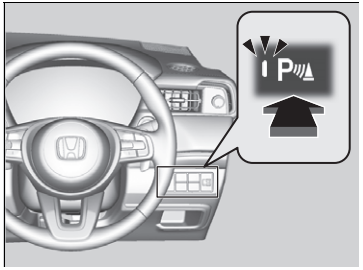
The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.
▶If you put any accessories (such as bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.
➡ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 537

* Not available on all models

Parking Sensor System On and Off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner*, rear centre and rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner* and front centre sensors* start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

Parking Sensor System On and Off

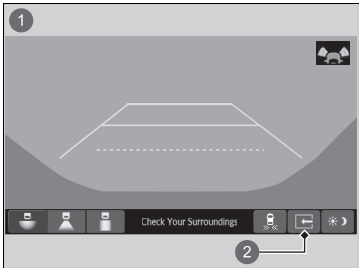
When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

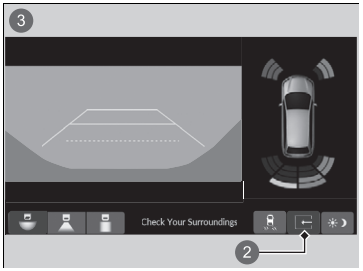
* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with multi-view rear camera

Screen Operation





You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

1. Split View Off
2. Split Screen Tab
3. Split View On

■ When the Distance between Your Vehicle and Obstacles Becomes Shorter

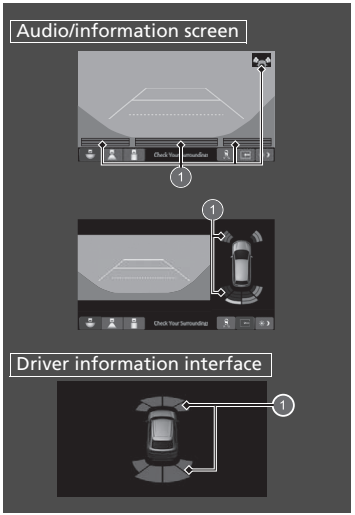
Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

Parking Sensor Indicator*

The parking sensor indicator blinks.

▶ If the system is turned off, only the parking sensor indicator will blink when an obstacle is detected.

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface/ Audio/information screen*
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: About 91-70 cm Rear: About 110-70 cm	Yellow*1 Comes on	
Short	Front: About 55-45 cm Rear: About 60-45 cm	Front: About 70-60 cm Rear: About 70-55 cm	Amber Comes on	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	Front: About 60-50 cm Rear: About 55-45 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	Front: About 50 cm or less Rear: About 45 cm or less	Red Comes on	



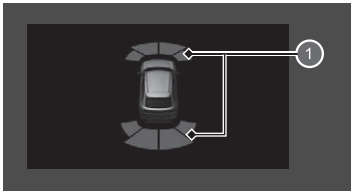
*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Except Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 115-60 cm	Yellow*1 Comes on	
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-50 cm	Amber Comes on	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 50-40 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 40 cm or less	Red Comes on	

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
▶ The indicator in the button turns off.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

3. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.

4. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
▶ The beeper sounds once.

5. While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again. To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the shift position to R, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Models with Low Speed Braking Control

If the rear sensors are turned off when using the parking sensor system, the Low Speed Braking Control System will not activate while reversing.

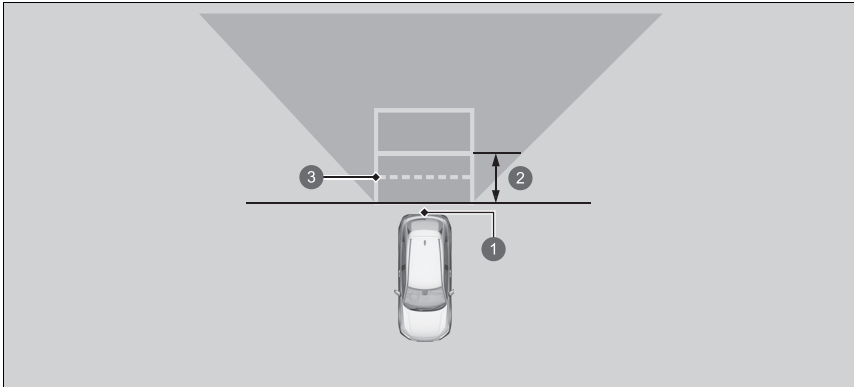
➡ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 450

* Not available on all models

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



1. Camera
2. Approx. 1 m
3. Tailgate open range

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

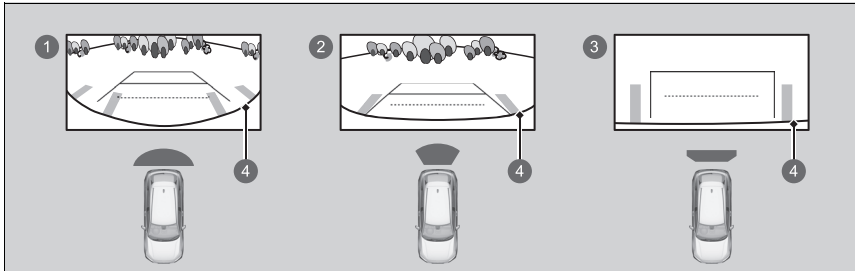
Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

* Not available on all models

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



❶ Wide View Mode
❷ Normal View Mode
❸ Top Down View Mode
❹ Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the engine, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
Customized Features P. 346

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in R, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Taiwanese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Pakistani models

EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on EURO V/5 unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Except Indonesian, Taiwanese, and Pakistani models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 40 L**

Models with Turbocharger

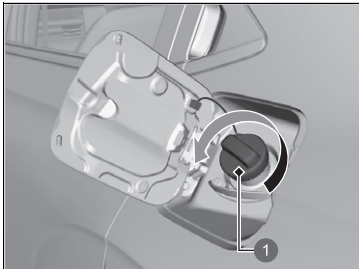
■ **Engine cleaner**

Fuel quality varies by region. Add genuine injector cleaner agent according to the time and distance instructions in the maintenance schedule.
Please use a genuine Honda injector cleaner agent. If not available, please use a PEA (polyetheramine) based cleaning agent instead.
Regular use of injector cleaner may be needed in countries or regions without a maintenance schedule. Consult your dealer for more information.

How to Refuel

1 Fuel Fill Door Release Handle

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.



1 Cap

4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

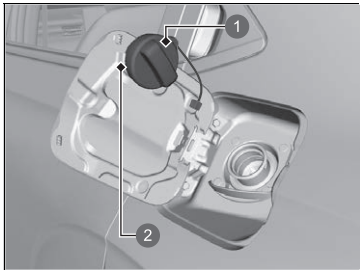
Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

⚠CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.



1 Cap
2 Holder

5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.

6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.

▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.

7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.

▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

Maintenance Schedule P. 557

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil P. 568
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

GCC country models

You can improve the mileage and reduce the CO_2 emissions of your vehicle by following these tips:

- Operate your vehicle correctly.
- Regularly maintain your vehicle.
- Maintain proper tyre pressure.
- Avoid carrying excessive loads.
- Adopt efficient driving techniques, such as driving at lower speeds, reducing idling time, and avoiding aggressive driving.

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the maintenance schedule. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information of when to replace them.

➔ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 551
➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 557
➔ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 568

The high temperature indicator may come on when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The indicator goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 548
Safety When Performing Maintenance 549
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 550
Oil Monitor System* 551
Maintenance Schedule 557
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet.. 564
Opening the Bonnet 566
Recommended Engine Oil 568
Oil Check 570
Adding Engine Oil 572
Engine Coolant 573
Transmission Fluid 578
Brake Fluid 579
Refilling Window Washer Fluid..... 581
Fuel Filter 581
Replacing Light Bulbs 582
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades.... 588
Checking and Maintaining Tyres
Checking Tyres 593
Wear Indicators..... 594
Tyre Service Life 594
Tyre and Wheel Replacement..... 595
Tyre Rotation 596
Snow Traction Devices 598
Battery..... 599
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Remote Battery 603
Climate Control System Maintenance ..605
Cleaning
Interior Care 609
Exterior Care..... 613
Accessories and Modifications 616

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 557

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➔ **Brake Fluid** P. 579
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 593
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➔ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 582
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 588

* Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book*.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
  ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

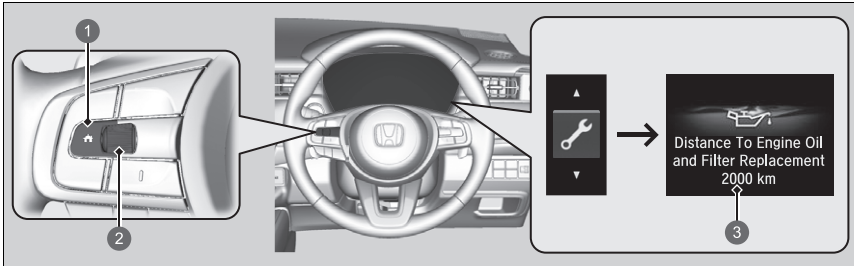
Oil Monitor System*

The oil monitor system messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

* Not available on all models

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.
You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The maintenance item(s) and remaining distance appear on the driver information interface.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

Regardless of what the oil monitor system information indicates, perform maintenance regularly. Please refer to the maintenance schedule for more details.
➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 557

Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
NORMAL —	Distance To Engine Oil Replacement ---- km Distance To Engine Oil and Filter Replacement ---- km	When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
	Distance To Engine Oil Replacement 2000 km Distance To Engine Oil and Filter Replacement 2000 km	When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.

Continued

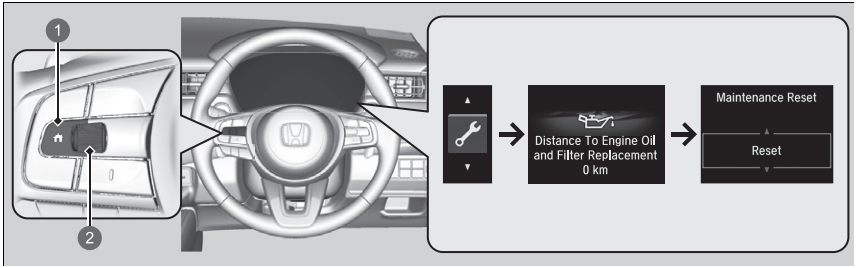
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
REPLACEMENT DUE SOON Engine Oil Replacement Due Soon Engine Oil and Filter Replacement Due Soon	Distance To Engine Oil Replacement 1490 km Distance To Engine Oil and Filter Replacement 1490 km	The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil are approaching the end of their life.
REPLACEMENT DUE NOW Engine Oil Replacement Due Now Engine Oil and Filter Replacement Due Now	Distance To Engine Oil Replacement 0 km Distance To Engine Oil and Filter Replacement 0 km	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
REPLACEMENT OVER DUE 	 	The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.

Continued

Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
5. Press and hold the left selector wheel until the reset mode is displayed.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Continued

GCC country models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt			•		•		•		•		•

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace fuel filter	Normal	Every 120,000 km									
	Severe	Every 60,000 km*1									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:											
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Battery electrolyte level		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Continued

Except GCC country models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Models without turbocharger	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
		Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
	Models with turbocharger		When indicator comes on or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter	Models without turbocharger	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
		Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Models with turbocharger		When indicator comes on or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element			Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1			Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs*2			Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt				•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Direct injection models Add genuine injector cleaner agent*3			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Algerian models
Inspect every 20,000 km.
*3:Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Cape Verde, Djibouti, Dominica, Equatorial Guinea, Gambia, Grand Cayman, Guatemala, Guinea, Haiti, Honduras, Iraq, Liberia, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Philippines, Peru, Sierra Leone, Togo, and Venezuela.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid				•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank*1	Normal		Every 140,000 km									
	Severe		Every 90,000 km*3									
Replace fuel filter in tank*2	Normal		Every 120,000 km									
	Severe		Every 60,000 km*3									
Check expiration date for tyre repair kit bottle (if equipped)			Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:Except African (except South African), South American (except Brazilian), and Indonesian models
*2:African (except South African), South American (except Brazilian), and Indonesian models
*3:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under “severe” conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

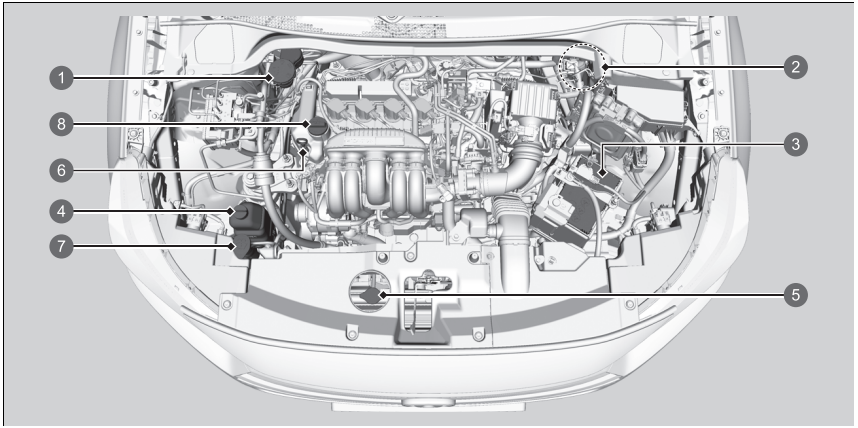
Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

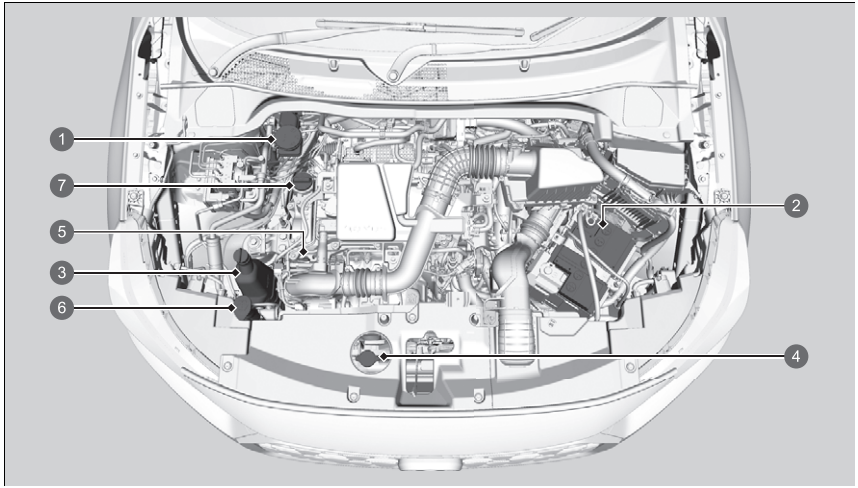
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

Models without turbocharger



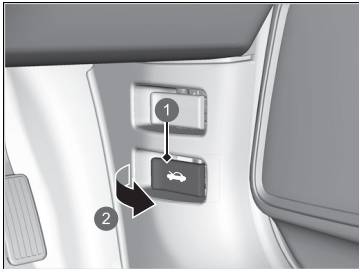
1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
2. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
3. Battery
4. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
5. Radiator Cap
6. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
7. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
8. Engine Oil Fill Cap

Models with turbocharger



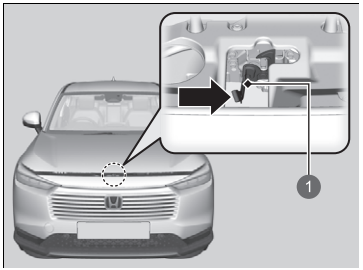
1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
2. Battery
3. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
4. Radiator Cap
5. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
6. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap

Opening the Bonnet



❶ Bonnet Release Handle
❷ Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



❶ Lever

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

Models with turbocharger

⚠WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

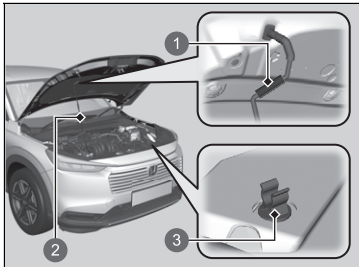
All models

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



❶ Grip
❷ Support Rod
❸ Clamp

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

Models with turbocharger
For some countries

- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

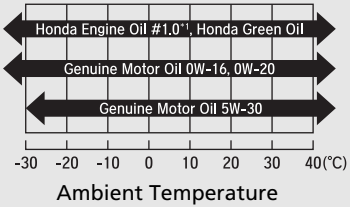
Recommended Engine Oil

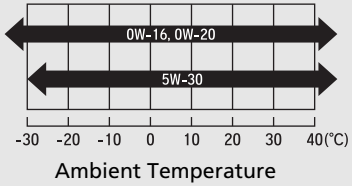
Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Models without turbocharger

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Engine Oil #1.0*1 • Honda Green Oil • Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• API service SN or higher grade • API Certification Mark "Starburst" or "Shield" • ACEA A5/B5





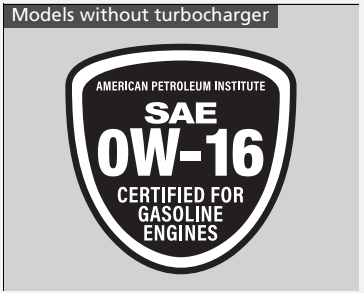
*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

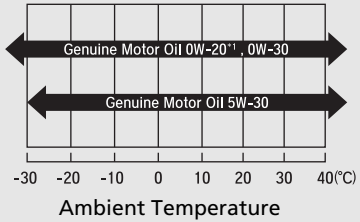
The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

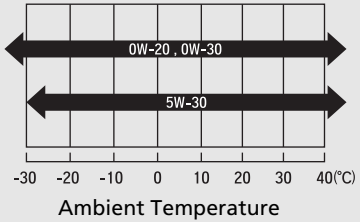
Models without turbocharger



Models with turbocharger

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• API service SN or higher grade • API Certification Mark “Starburst” • ACEA A5/B5



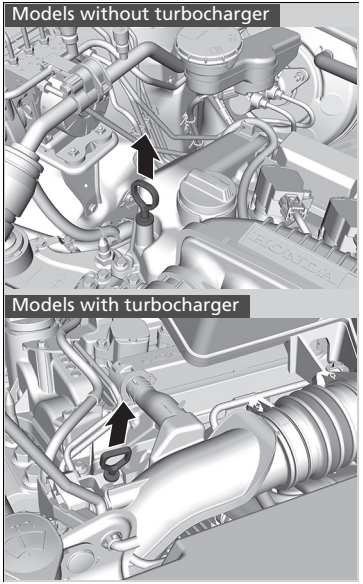


*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

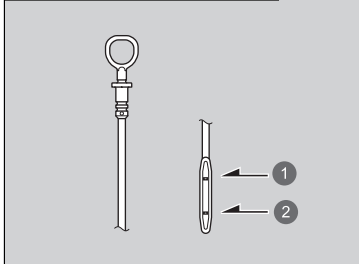


1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

Oil Check

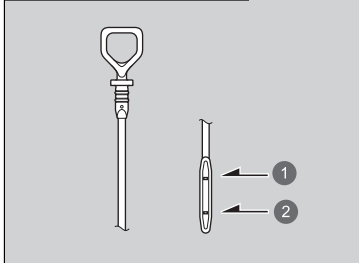
If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Models without turbocharger



1 Upper Mark
2 Lower Mark

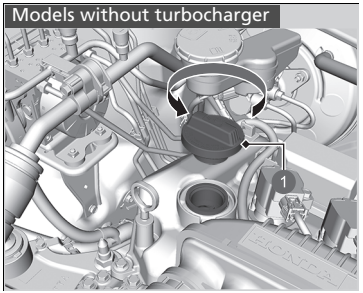
Models with turbocharger



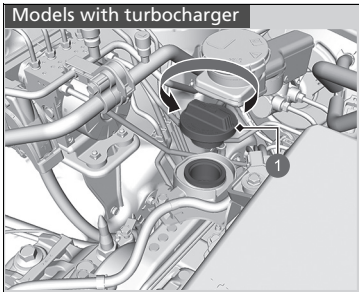
1 Upper Mark
2 Lower Mark

4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil



❶ Engine Oil Fill Cap



❶ Engine Oil Fill Cap

1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Engine Coolant

WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

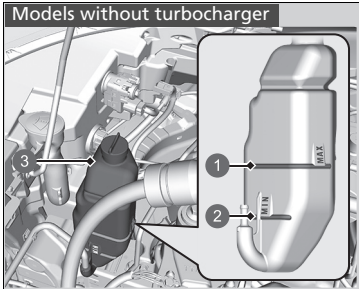
If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

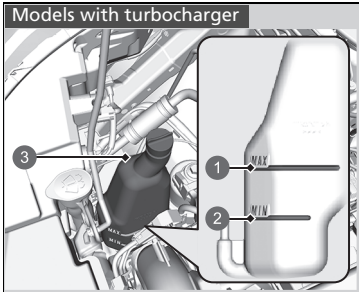
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

■ Reserve Tank

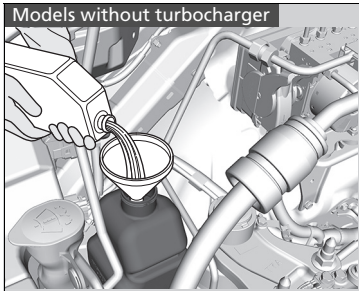


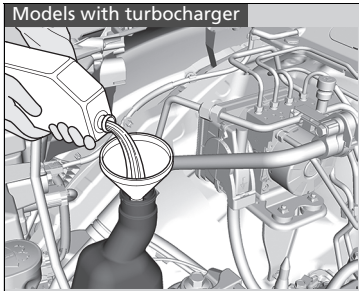
❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

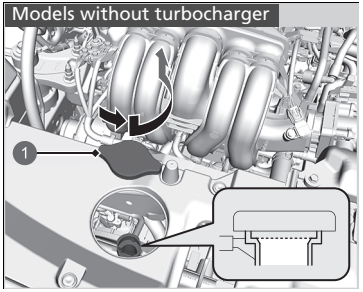




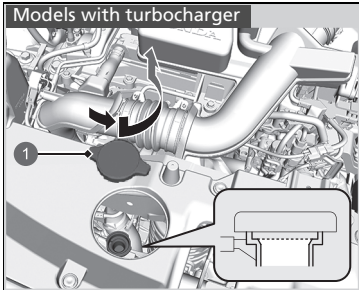
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

Radiator



1 Radiator Cap



1 Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Models with pictogram label

Radiator Cap

- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Transmission Fluid

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 557

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

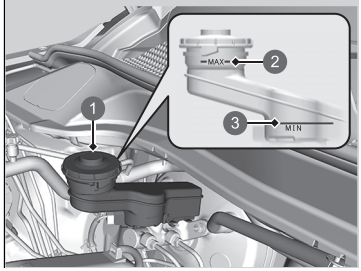
Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid

Right-hand Drive Type

Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

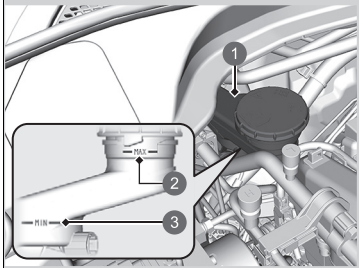
We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Continued

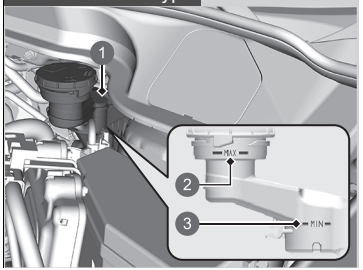
Right-hand Drive Type

Except Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models



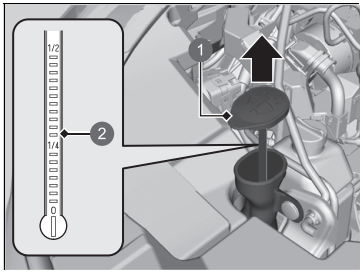
❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Left-hand Drive Type



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

❶ Cap
❷ Level Gauge

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.
Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.
Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Active Cornering Lights*

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

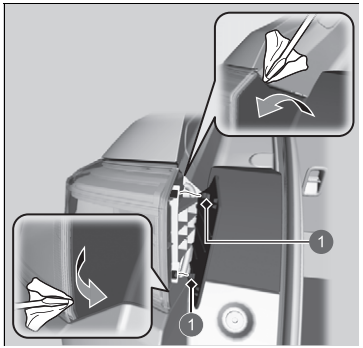
* Not available on all models

Models with bulb type rear turn signal lights

Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

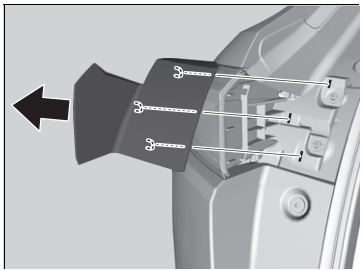
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



❶ Pins

1. Insert the flat-tip screwdriver between the upper end of the cover and the vehicle body, then remove the pin.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the vehicle body.
2. Insert the flat-tip screwdriver between the lower end of the cover and the light assembly, then remove the pin.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the light assembly.

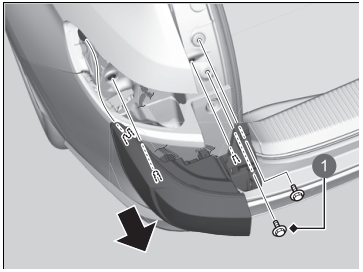


3. Remove the cover by pulling it in the direction of the arrow in the image.

Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

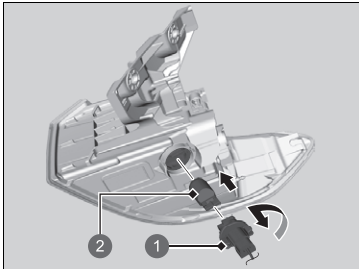
Brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued



❶ Bolts

4. Remove the bolts.
5. Remove the light assembly by pulling it in the direction of the arrow in the image.



❶ Socket
❷ Bulb

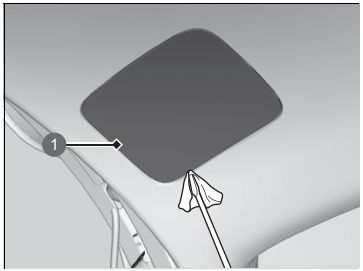
6. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
7. Insert a new bulb.

Models with bulb type back-up lights

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Light Bulbs

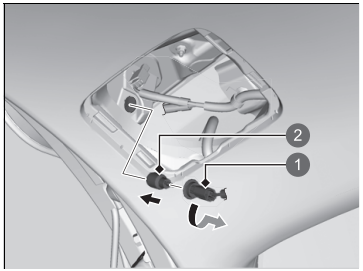
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Rear Fog Light: LED*
Back-Up Light: 16 W



❶ Cover

1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



❶ Socket
❷ Bulb

2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights and rear fog light* are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Models with LED type rear turn signal lights

Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Lights

Brake/taillights and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with LED type back-up lights

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Lights

Taillights, rear fog light*, and back-up lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Other Light Bulbs

■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

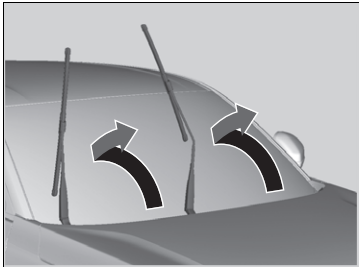
Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light bulbs.

* Not available on all models

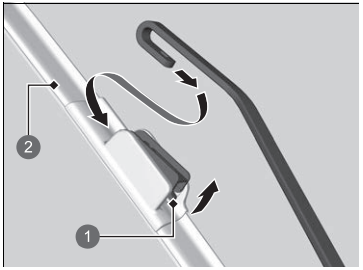
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

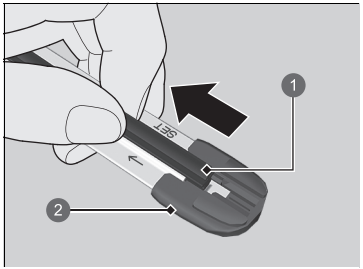


2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

❶ Tab
❷ Holder

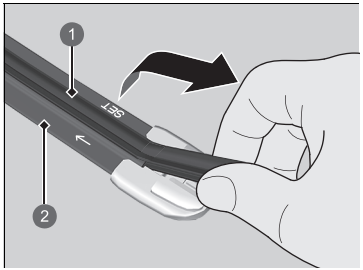
Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



❶ Wiper Blade
❷ End Cap at the bottom

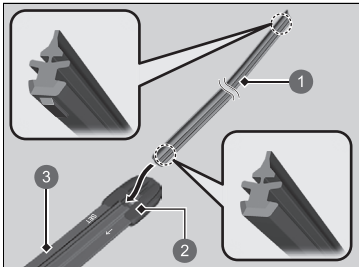
3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



❶ Wiper Blade
❷ Holder

4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

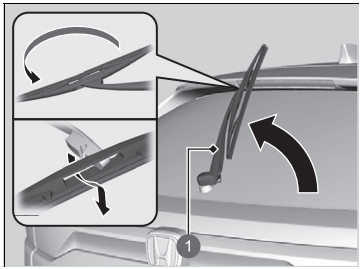
Continued



❶ Wiper Blade
❷ Cap
❸ Holder

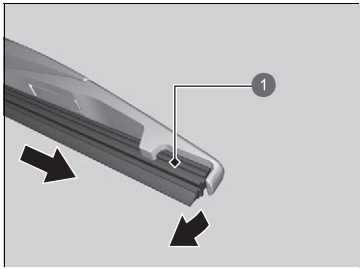
5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



❶ Wiper Arm

1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



❶ Wiper Blade

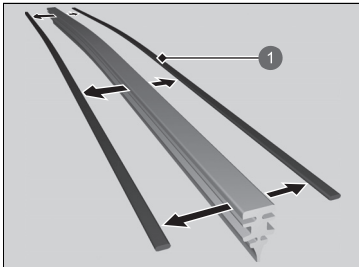
3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE
Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.
The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

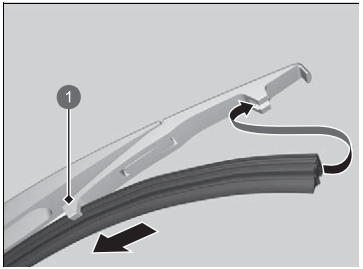
NOTICE
Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.

Continued



1 Retainer

4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.



1 Holder

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➔ **Wear Indicators** P. 594
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

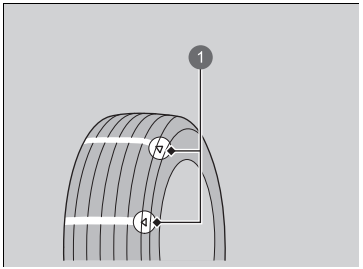
➔ **Deflation Warning System Calibration*/ Initialisation*** P. 429

Models with TPMS

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 425

Wear Indicators



1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

* Not available on all models

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

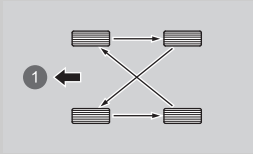
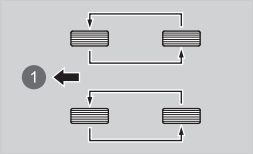
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

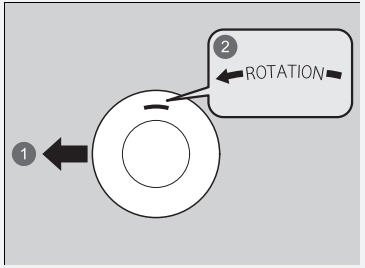
Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Tyres without rotation mark	Tyres with rotation mark
	

❶ Front

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



❶ Front
❷ Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➔ **Deflation Warning System Calibration*/ Initialisation*** P. 429

Models with TPMS

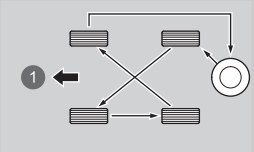
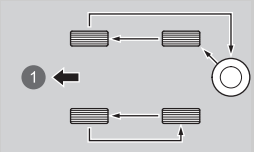
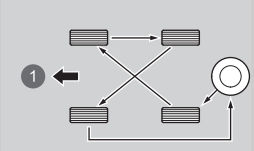
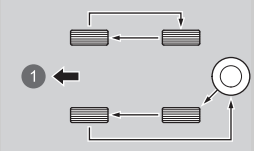
Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 425

* Not available on all models

Models with a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.

Drive Type	Tyres without rotation mark	Tyres with rotation mark
Right-hand		
Left-hand		

1 Front

Tyre Rotation

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Australian and Fijian models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
225/50R18	**RUD innove8 HYBRID 4718376**

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

All models
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

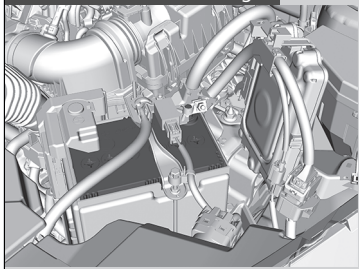
Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

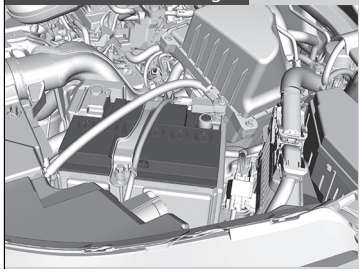
If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery

Models without turbocharger



Models with turbocharger



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 176
  - **Clock Setup** P. 306

Battery

WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Continued

Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Models with System Updates

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber)*, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Battery Label*

Example

Battery Label*

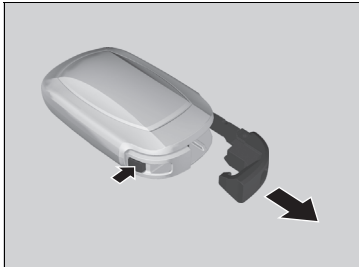
DANGER

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

* Not available on all models

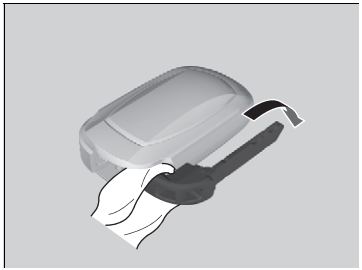
Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.

▶ Wrap the key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

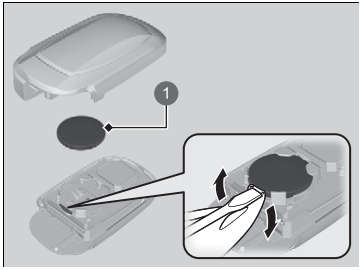
CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

Continued



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

According to Australian Standard;
⚠ **WARNING**
- The battery that powers the remote transmitter is hazardous – new and used batteries should be kept away from children.
- Lithium button/coin batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

* Not available on all models

Air Conditioning*

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

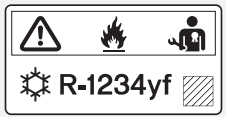
Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

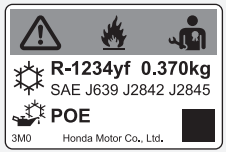
The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

Safety Labels P. 104
Specifications P. 686

Australian and Fijian models



Singaporean models



: Caution

: Flammable Refrigerant

: Requires a qualified technician to service

: Air Conditioning System

: Air Conditioning System Lubricant Type

* Not available on all models

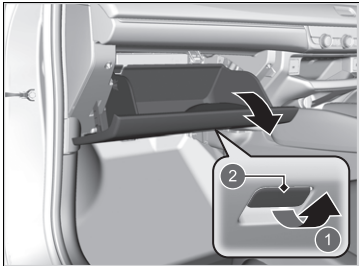
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 557

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

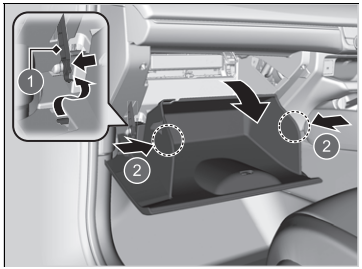
❶ Pull
❷ Handle

Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

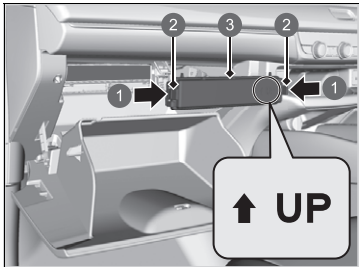
The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



❶ Stopper
❷ Tabs

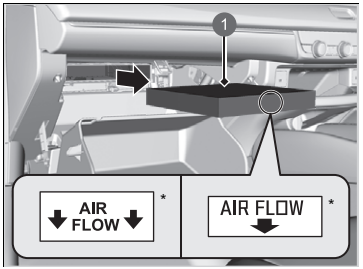
2. Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.



❶ Push
❷ Tabs
❸ Cover

5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.

Continued



1 Dust and Pollen Filter

6. Remove the filter from the case.

7. Install a new filter in the case.

▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

* Not available on all models

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.
Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.

1 Loop

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Continued

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass*

The front side windows are laminated with UV- and/or IR-cut film. When cleaning the interior side of the windows, make sure to use a soft damp cloth.

■ Panoramic roof glass*

The interior side of the glass has a heat reflective coating. Wipe using a soft cloth moist with cold or warm water.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components* around the rearview mirror.

Models with Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass

To ensure the longevity of the UV- and/or IR-cut film, avoid:

- Opening and closing the windows when they are covered with dirt and other debris.
- Using a glass cleaner containing polishing compounds, wax, or detergents.

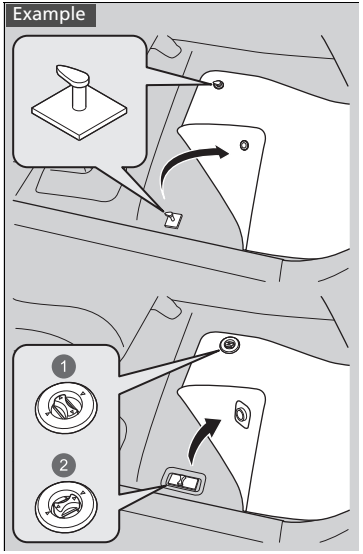
Models with panoramic roof

To ensure the longevity of the heat reflective coating avoid:

- Using glass cleaners, waxes, or detergents that contain polishing powder or compound.

* Not available on all models

Floor Mats



❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Continued

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

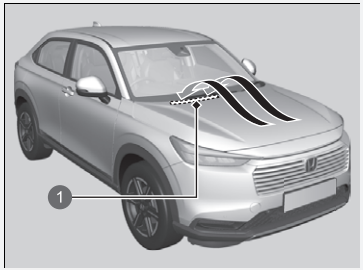
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera* or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



1 Air Intake Vents

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 669
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

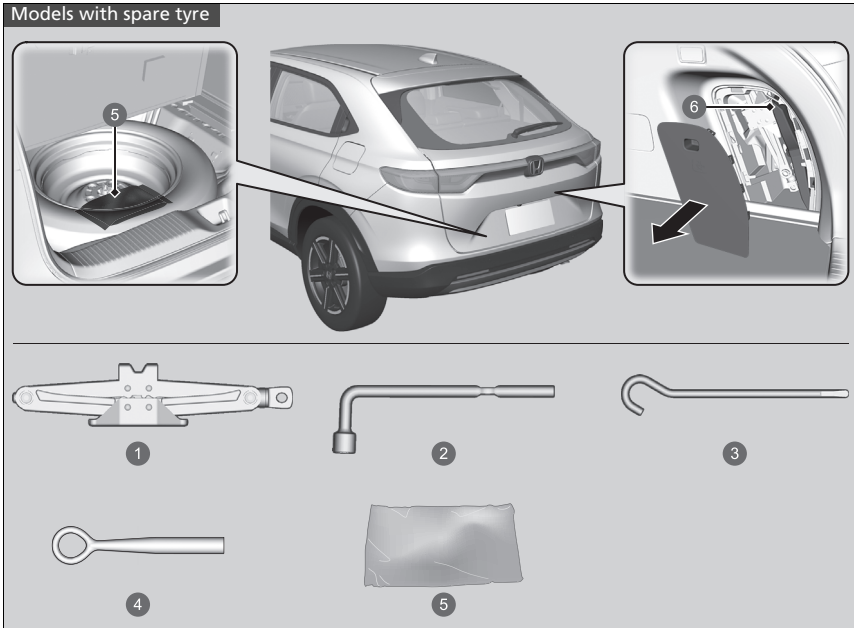
This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 620
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Changing a Flat Tyre 622
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 632
Handling of the Jack..... 646
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine..... 650
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 652
Emergency Engine Start 653
Emergency Engine Stop 654
If the Battery Is Dead 655
Shift Lever Does Not Move..... 658
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating..... 659
Indicator Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine Oil Pressure Low*1/Engine oil pressure low*2 Warning Appears..... 662
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 662
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 663
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 664
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 665
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On ..666
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks..667
If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks 668
Fuses
Fuse Locations 669
Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 676
Emergency Towing..... 677
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate 678
Emergency Call (eCall)* 680

* Not available on all models

Types of Tools

Models with spare tyre

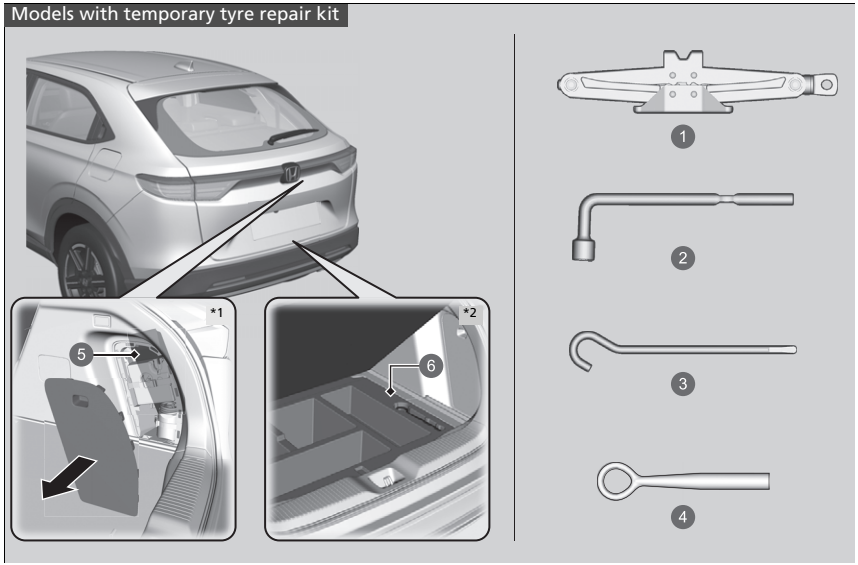


1. Jack
2. Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle
3. Jack Handle Bar
4. Detachable Towing Hook
5. Storage Bag*
6. Tool Bag

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

* Not available on all models



1. Jack*
2. Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle*
3. Jack Handle Bar*
4. Detachable Towing Hook
5. Tool Bag*
6. Tool Case

*1: Models with tool bag
*2: Models without tool bag

* Not available on all models

Models with spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre*/full-size spare tyre*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the regular tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare* precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specifications P. 686

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a regular tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

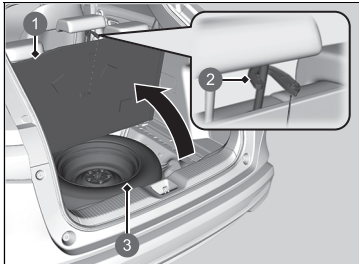
Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the regular rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the regular tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

* Not available on all models

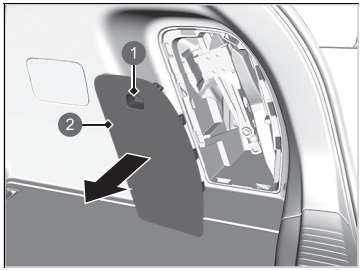
Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



❶ Floor Lid
❷ Hook
❸ Spare Tyre

1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
▶ To keep the floor lid open, use the hook onto a leg of the rear centre head restraint.

2. Unscrew the wing bolt and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



❶ Tab
❷ Cover

3. Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.

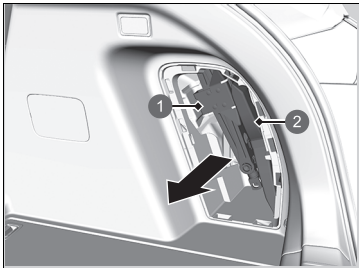
Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

NOTICE
Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

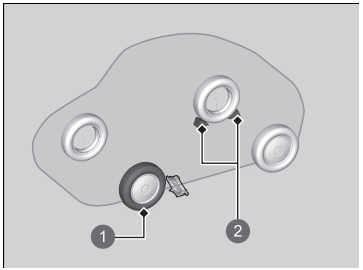
Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

Continued



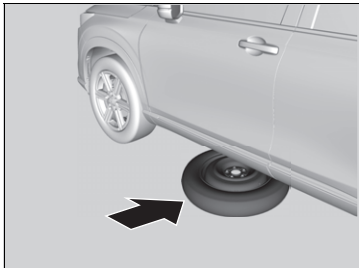
❶ Jack
❷ Tool Bag

4. Take the jack and tool bag out of the compartment.
5. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag.

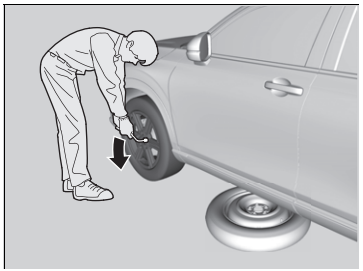


❶ The tyre to be replaced.
❷ Wheel Blocks

6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



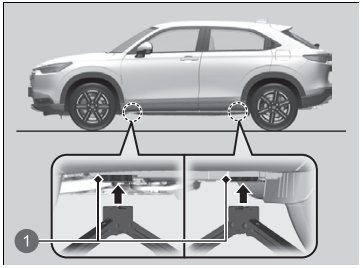
7. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

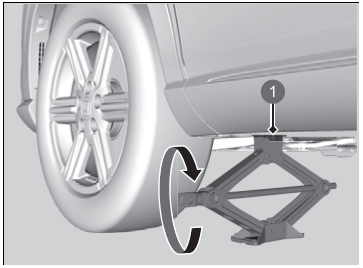
Continued

How to Set Up the Jack



❶ Jacking Points

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.



❶ Jacking Point

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

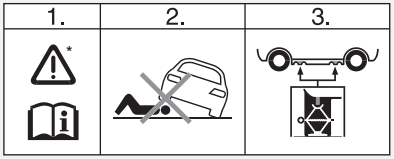
⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

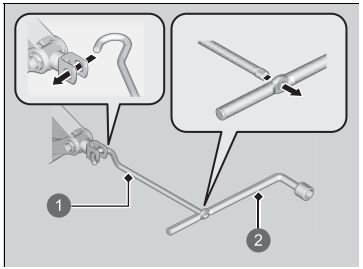
For some countries

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

* Not available on all models



❶ Jack Handle Bar
❷ Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

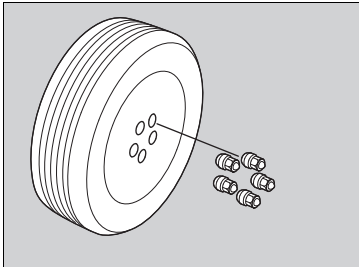
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

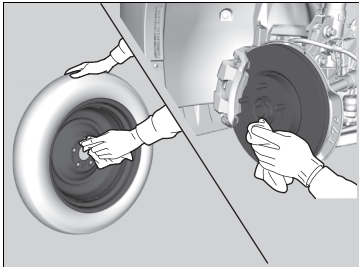
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Continued

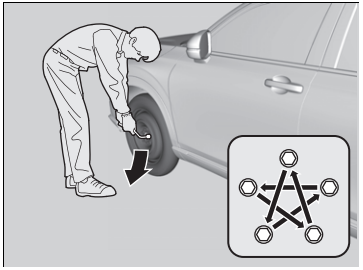
Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



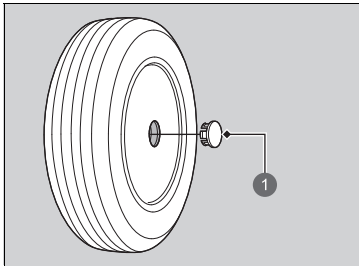
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around tightening the nuts two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

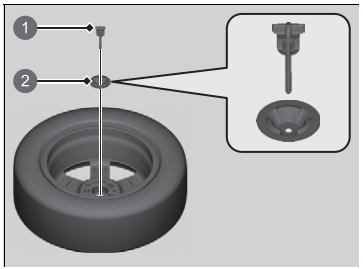
Models with full-size spare tyre

Storing the Flat Tyre



❶ Centre Cap

1. Remove the centre cap.



❶ Wing Bolt
❷ Spacer Cone

2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
3. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
4. Store the jack in the right side compartment in the luggage area.
5. Store the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool bag. Store the tool bag in the right side compartment in the luggage area.

Storing the Flat Tyre

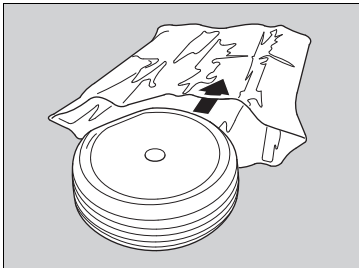
⚠WARNING

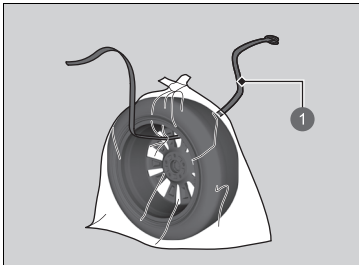
Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Continued

Models with compact spare tyre

Storing the Flat Tyre





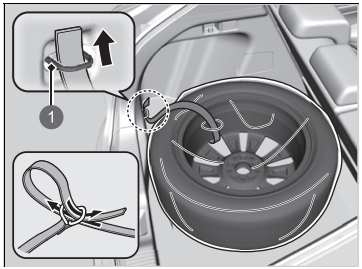
1 Belt

1. Put the flat tyre in the storage bag provided with your vehicle.
   ▶ The storage bag is inside the spare tyre.
2. Knot the top of the storage bag.
3. Store the jack in the right side compartment in the luggage area.
4. Store the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool bag. Store the tool bag in the right side compartment in the luggage area.
5. Bore through the bag, and pass the holding belt through the hole of the bag and the wheel of the flat tyre as shown.

Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.



1 Rear Anchorage

6. Place the flat tyre in the luggage area, and thread the belt through the rear anchorage as shown.
7. Pass the belt through the ring, and tighten the belt to secure the flat tyre in place.

Models with deflation warning system

Deflation Warning System and the Spare Tyre

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a full-size spare tyre.

➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration*/Initialisation*** P. 429

* Not available on all models

Models with temporary tyre repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

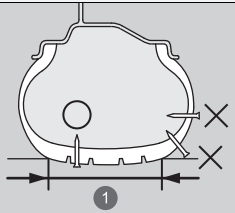
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

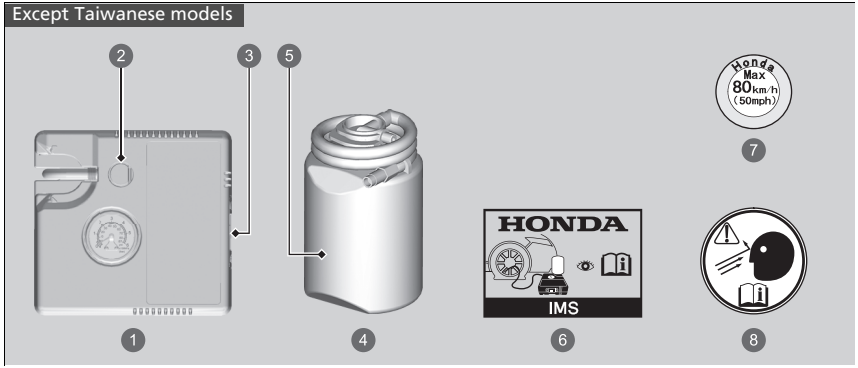
1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Except Taiwanese models

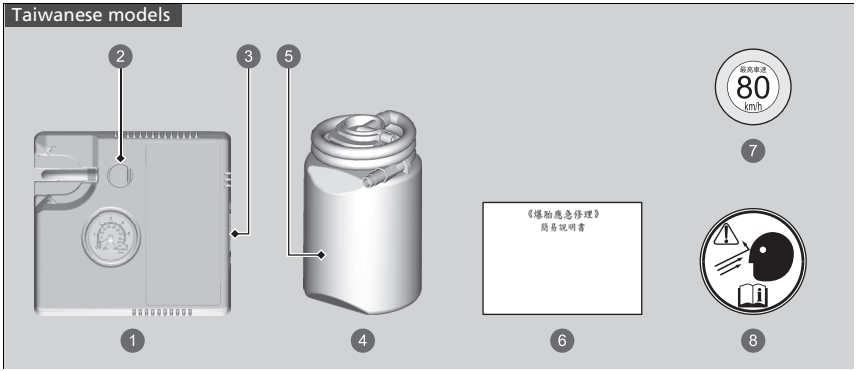


1. Air Compressor
2. Deflate Button
3. Air Compressor Switch
4. Sealant Bottle
5. Expiration Date
6. Instruction Manual
7. Speed Restriction Label
8. Wheel Label

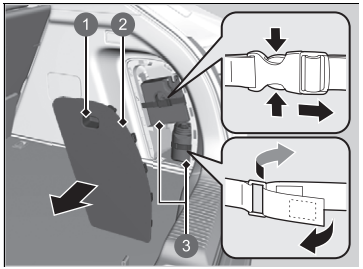
Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Continued



1. Air Compressor
2. Deflate Button
3. Air Compressor Switch
4. Sealant Bottle
5. Expiration Date
6. Instruction Manual
7. Speed Restriction Label
8. Wheel Label

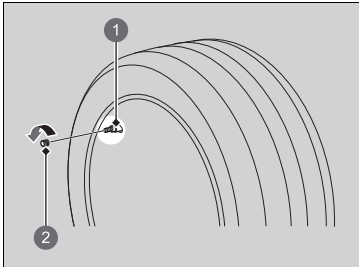


❶ Tab
❷ Cover
❸ Tyre Repair Kit

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.
3. Take the kit out of the compartment.
4. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tyre and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

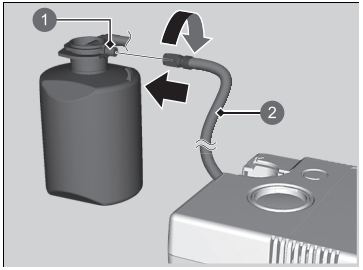
Continued

Injecting Sealant and Air



❶ Tyre Valve Stem
❷ Valve Cap

1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.



❶ Bottle Tyre Valve
❷ Air Compressor Hose

2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

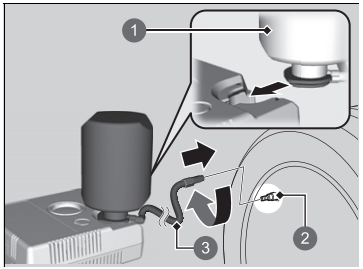
Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

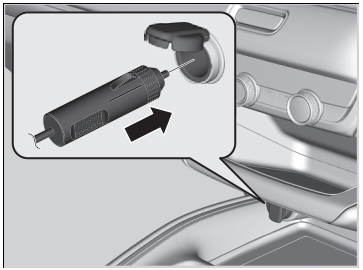
The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

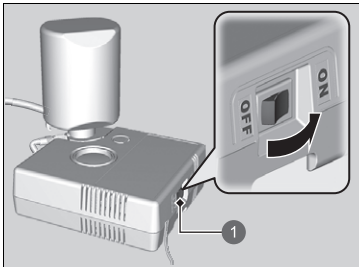


❶ Sealant Bottle
❷ Tyre Valve Stem
❸ Sealant/Air Hose

4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Continued





1 Air Compressor Switch

6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➔ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 273

7. Start the engine.
➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 103

8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.

9. After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the kit.
▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Injecting Sealant and Air

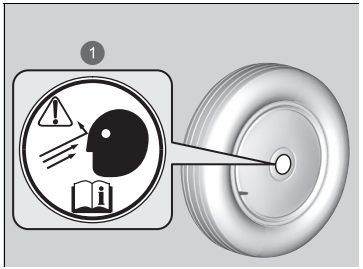
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete, the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.



❶ Wheel Label

10. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Detach the bottle from the air compressor.
13. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
15. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.

Injecting Sealant and Air

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

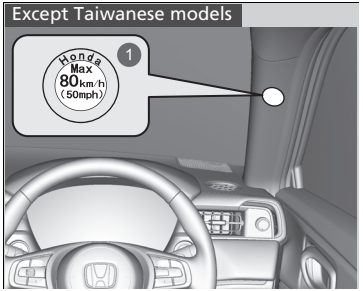
See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

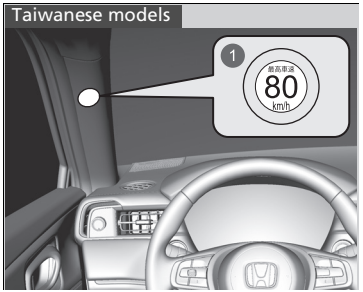
This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

Continued

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

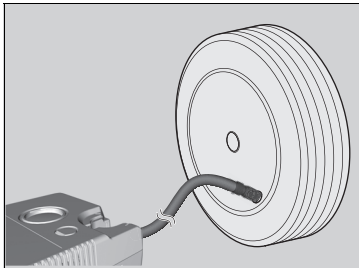


❶ Speed Restriction Label



❶ Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
   ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

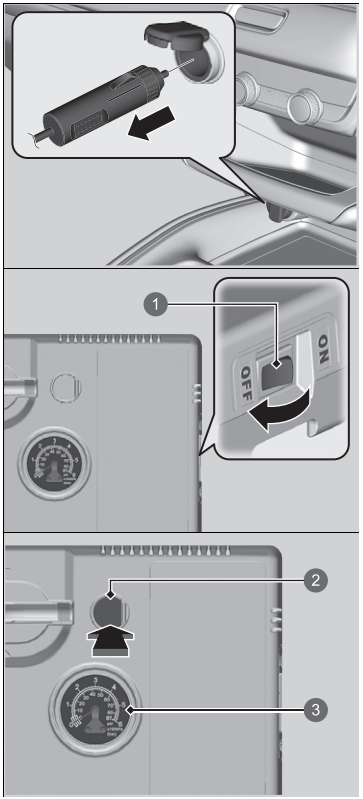


4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is:
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):
  Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 677
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more:
  Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

Continued



❶ Air Compressor Switch
❷ Deflate Button
❸ Air Pressure Gauge

- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.):
  Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre reaches the specified air pressure.
  ➡ **Injecting Sealant and Air** P. 636
  Then, drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.
  Do not exceed 80 km/h.

▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

6. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

7. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

8. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).

9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

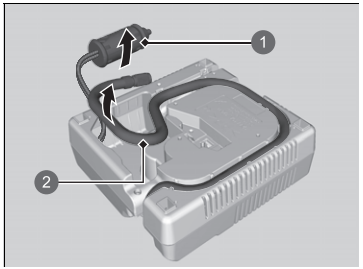
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

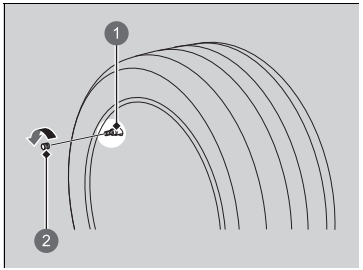
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Power Plug
2. Air Hose

1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.
   Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 633
2. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the air hose from the kit.



1. Tyre Valve Stem
2. Valve Cap

4. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

Continued

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

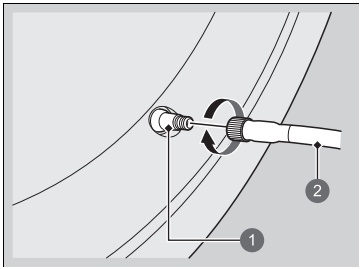
WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

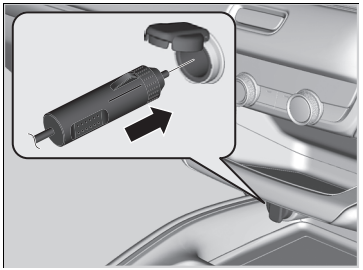
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



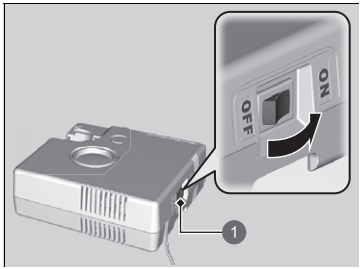
❶ Tyre Valve Stem
❷ Air Hose

5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➔ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 273

7. Start the engine.
➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 103



1 Air Compressor Switch

8. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
- ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
- ▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.

9. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

10. Turn off the kit.
- ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.

11. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.

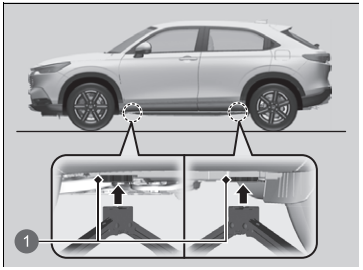
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Models with temporary tyre repair kit

Models without jack

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.

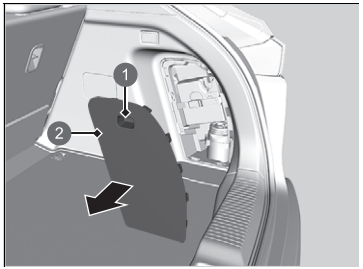


1 Jacking Points

Models with temporary tyre repair kit

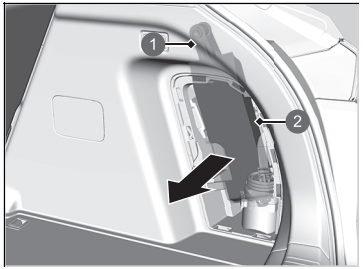
Models with jack

How to Set up the Jack



❶ Tab
❷ Cover

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.



❶ Jack
❷ Tool Bag

5. Take the jack and tool bag out of the compartment.
6. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag.

Continued

How to Set up the Jack

⚠WARNING

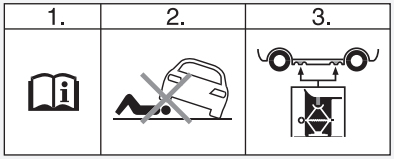
The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

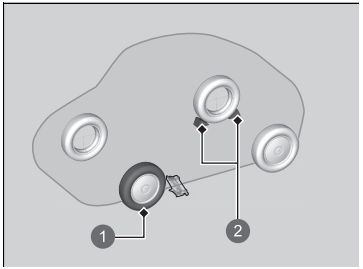
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

For some countries

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

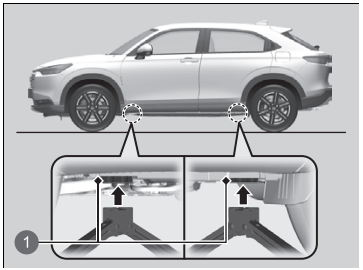


1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



❶ The tyre to be replaced.
❷ Wheel Blocks

7. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



❶ Jacking Points

8. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

How to Set up the Jack

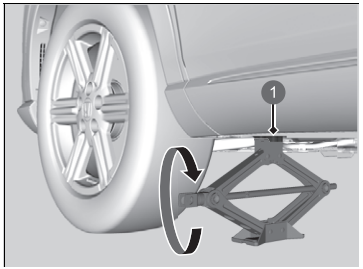
WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call a dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

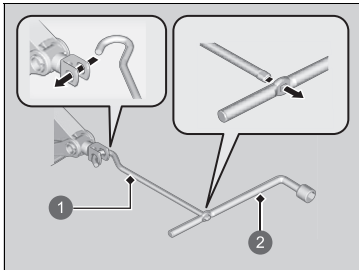
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.



❶ Jacking Point

9. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



❶ Jack Handle Bar
❷ Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

10. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Check for a message on the driver information interface.** If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message*1/the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message*2 appears. ➔ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 652
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 676
The starter turns over normally, but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➔ **Starting the Engine** P. 399
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 212 ➔ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 115
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➔ **Fuel Gauge** P. 125
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 676
	If the problem continues: ➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 677

If you cannot start the engine after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➡ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 655

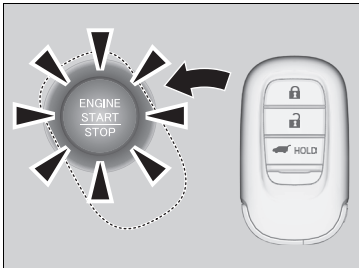
Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily start the engine using the emergency start procedure.

➡ **Emergency Engine Start** P. 653

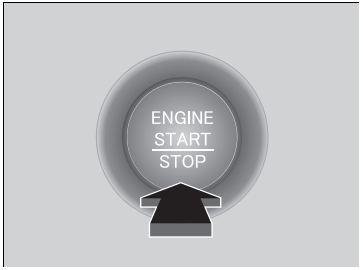
Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message*1/the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message*2 appears on the driver information interface, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button stays on for about 10 seconds.



3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on.
   ▶ The engine starts.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

*1: Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

Emergency Engine Start

If the engine cannot start using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to start it using the emergency start procedure below.
Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to start the engine using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Engine Start

Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 658

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

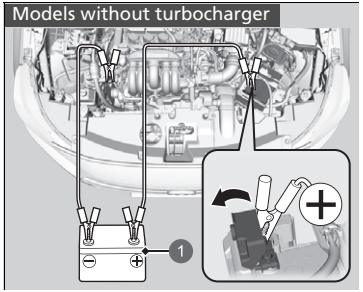
Emergency Engine Stop

NOTICE

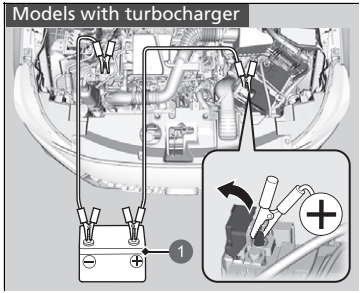
Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



❶ Booster Battery



❶ Booster Battery

1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

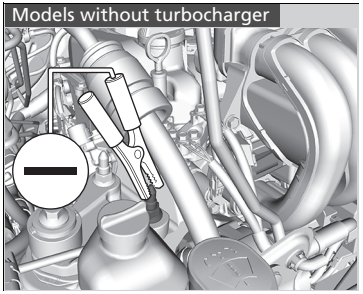
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

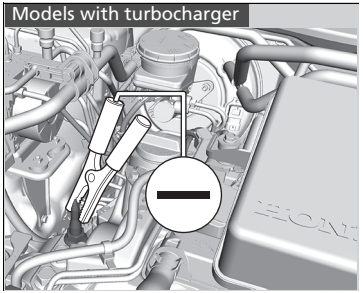
NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Continued





5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.

7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting Procedure

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Jump Starting Procedure

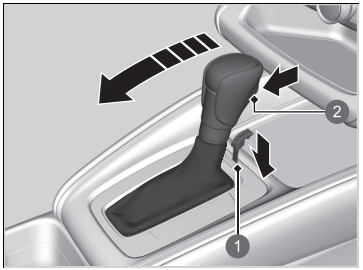
The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, VSA OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS*, and Safety Support (Amber)* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to on after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Shift Lock Release Slot
2. Release Button

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2/the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message*3 appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
   - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
   - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

*1: Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
*2: Taiwanese models
*3: Except Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

Continued

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

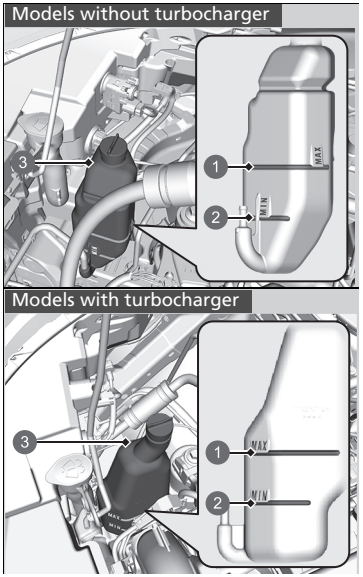
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2/the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message*3 on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2/the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message*3 on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

*1: Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
*2: Taiwanese models
*3: Except Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the driver information interface.

If the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2/the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message*3 does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
*2: Taiwanese models
*3: Except Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low*1/Engine oil pressure low*2 Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

➡ **Oil Check** P. 570

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine Oil Pressure Low***1**/Engine oil pressure low***2 warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Australian, Fijian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low*1/Engine oil pressure low*2 Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 666

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
  If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

(Red)

(Amber)

■ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 519

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

Models with deflation warning system

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration*/Initialisation*** P. 429

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

* Not available on all models

Models with TPMS

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 425

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

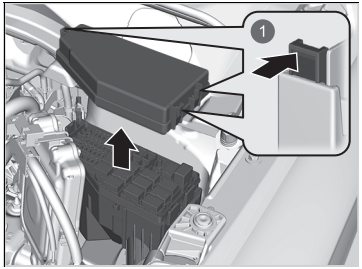
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Fuse box A

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



1 Tabs

Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Wiper	30 A
2		Left LCM	15 A
3		Hazard	10 A
4		Stop	10 A
5		–*1 EVP*2	(20 A)
6		Injector*	(20 A)
7		TCU	(10 A)
8		IGP	15 A
9		IG Coil	15 A
10		DBW*1 IGP2*2	15 A
11		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		ST MAGNETIC SW	30 A
14		Keyless Access	10 A
15		Battery Sensor*1 –*2	7.5 A
16		Right LCM	15 A
17		Back Up FI-ECU	(10 A)
18		Horn	10 A
19		Sub Audio*	(7.5 A)
20		Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
21		Audio*	(15 A)
22		Back Up	15 A
23		Sub Fan	30 A
24		ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
25		IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26		LAF	10 A
27		–*1 VBACT*2	(10 A)
28	–	–	–
29		–	(30 A)
30		–	(30 A)
31		START DIAG*	7.5 A
32	–	–	–
33	–	–	–

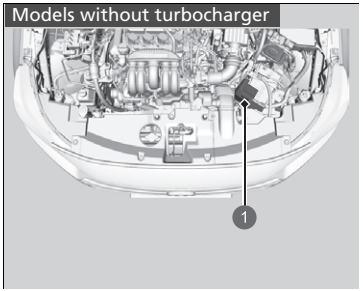
*1:Models without turbocharger
*2:Models with turbocharger

* Not available on all models

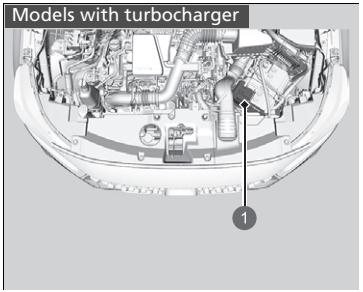
Continued

■ Fuse box B

Located near the ⊕ terminal of the battery. Have a dealer inspect and replace the fuse.



❶ Fuse Box



❶ Fuse Box

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		Battery Main	100 A*1 125 A*2
b		Battery Main (FAN)	70 A
c		Battery Main (ENG)	80 A
d		EPS	70 A

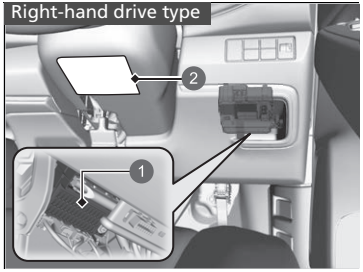
*1:Models without turbocharger
*2:Models with turbocharger

Models with fuse label

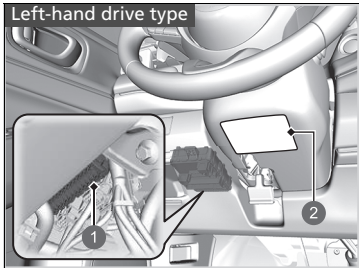
Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

Type A

Located under the dashboard.



1 Fuse Box
2 Fuse Label



1 Fuse Box
2 Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	7.5 A
2		ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3		–	(10 A)
4		LCM*	(5 A)
5		Option	10 A
6		Option 2	10 A
7		Meter	10 A
8		Fuel Pump	15 A
9		AIRCON	10 A
10		–	(20 A)
11		MON	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	RR L	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	AS	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17		Transmission	10 A
18		USB Charger*	(10 A)
19		–	(20 A)
20		Starter Cut Relay	7.5 A
21		ACG	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23		Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
24		Option	10 A
25		Driver Door Lock*	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	RR R	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	DR	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
30		–	(10 A)
31	DR	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
32		–	(20 A)
33	DR	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
34		VSA/ABS	10 A
35		SRS	10 A
36		–	(20 A)
37		–	(15 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39		Driver Door Unlock*	(10 A)

* Not available on all models

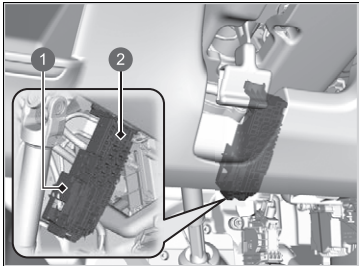
Continued

Left-hand drive type

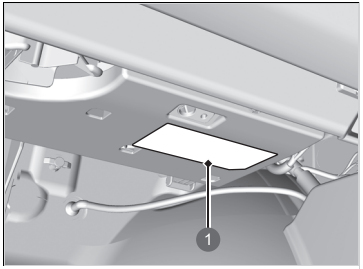
■ Type B

Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box.
Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



❶ Fuse No. 1
❷ Fuse No. 2-25



❶ Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the glove box.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

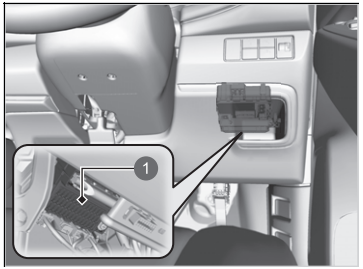
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8		Heater Motor	30 A
9		Power Tailgate Motor*	(40 A)
10		Rear Demister	30 A
11		–	(30 A)
12		–	(30 A)
13	–	–	–
14		SRS	10 A
15	–	–	–
16		MG Clutch	(7.5 A)
17		IMG	10 A
18		–	(20 A)
19	–	–	–
20	–	–	–
21		Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
22	–	–	–
23		Washer	(15 A)
24		–	(10 A)
25	–	–	–

* Not available on all models

Models without fuse label

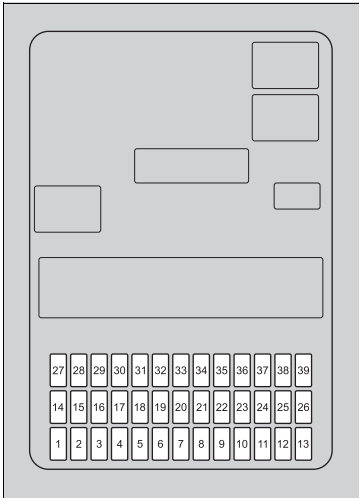
■ Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



❶ Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Continued

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

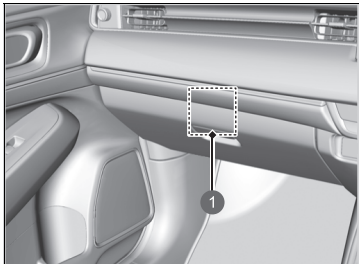
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option 2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	AIRCON	10 A
10	–	–
11	MON	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission	10 A
18	USB Charger	10 A
19	–	–
20	Starter Cut Relay	7.5 A
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	Option	10 A
25	–	–
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	–	–
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	–	–
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	–	–

Right-hand drive type

Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

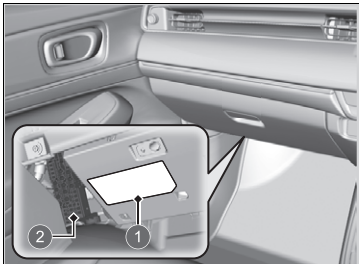
Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box. Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



❶ Fuse No. 1

The fuses other than No.1 are under the dashboard.



❶ Fuse Label
❷ Fuse No. 2-25

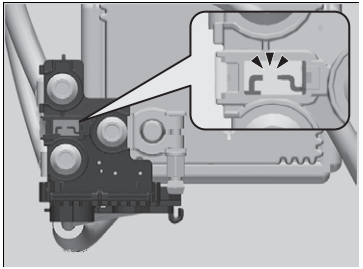
Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

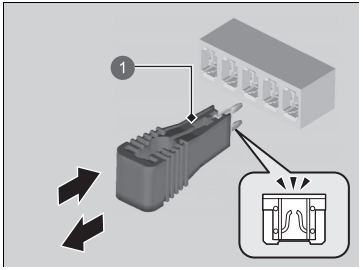
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8		Heater Motor	30 A
9		Power Tailgate Motor*	(40 A)
10		Rear Demister	30 A
11		–	(30 A)
12		–	(30 A)
13	–	–	–
14		SRS	10 A
15	–	–	–
16		MG Clutch	(7.5 A)
17		IMG	10 A
18		–	(20 A)
19	–	–	–
20	–	–	–
21		Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
22	–	–	–
23		Washer	(15 A)
24		–	(10 A)
25	–	–	–

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the cover on the ⊕ terminal.
3. Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



❶ Fuse Puller

4. Remove the fuse box cover.
5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.
➡ **Fuse Locations** P. 669

Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the cover of the engine compartment fuse box A.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

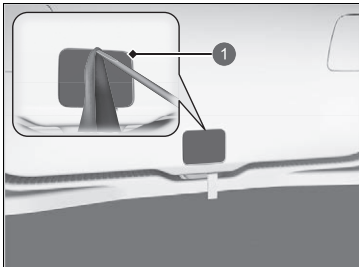
NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
Parking Brake P. 519

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Cover

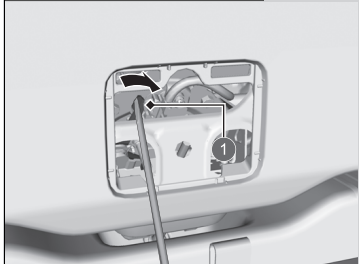
1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

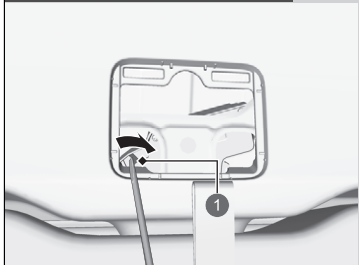
When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Models with power tailgate



❶ Lever

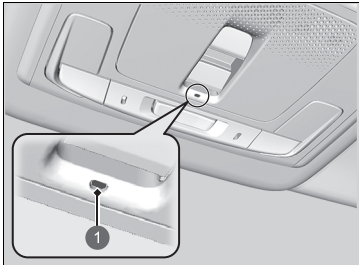
Models without power tailgate



❶ Lever

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

Automatic emergency call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

1 eCall Indicator

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Your vehicle is equipped with the 999-based eCall service system.

The 999-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 999-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the on-board sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 999-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

➡ **Manual emergency call** P. 682

Any processing of personal data through the 999-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single emergency number 999 is designated.

* Not available on all models

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.
- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 30 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the 999-based eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:
- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Recipients of data processed by the 999-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single emergency number 999 is designated.

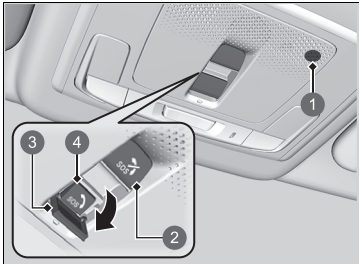
Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:
- both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- Your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Manual emergency call



If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually: Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds has elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

1. Microphone
2. **SOS** Cancel Button
3. Cover
4. **SOS** Button

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Data privacy

The 999-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 999-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Honda eCall Service Information:
If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service booklet for list of offices.

* Not available on all models

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 686
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number 692
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 694
Utility Compliance*
Environmental Protection Regulation... 700
Open Source Licence* 701

* Not available on all models

Models without turbocharger

Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V
Curb Weight	1,267 kg*1 1,251 kg*2 1,278 kg*3 1,262 - 1,271 kg*4 1,278 - 1,317 kg*5 1,250 - 1,281 kg*6 1,273 - 1,294 kg*9, *16 1,262 - 1,279 kg*7 1,273 - 1,275 kg*10 1,271 - 1,297 kg*11 1,265 - 1,283 kg*12 1,263 - 1,272 kg*13 1,267 kg*14 1,270 - 1,271 kg*15
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb*9, *17 See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*3 1,740 kg*8, *16
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb*9, *17 See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*3
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight*8, *16	Front 920 kg Rear 820 kg

*1: Australian and Fijian models
*2: Singaporean models
*3: African models with right-hand drive type
*4: Cambodian, Laotian, and Vietnamese models
*5: Middle Eastern models
*6: Indonesian models
*7: Filipino models
*8: Except African and New Caledonia models
*9: Ghanaian models
*10: Latin American models with right-hand drive type
*11: Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models
*12: Bruneian, Bangladeshi, and Sri Lankan models
*13: Malaysian models
*14: Taiwanese models
*15: Pakistani models
*16: Nigerian models
*17: New Caledonia models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm
Displacement	1,498 cm^3
Compression Ratio	10.6 : 1
Max. Power*1	89 kW (119 HP)/6,600 rpm
Max. Torque*1	145 N·m (14.8 kgf·m)/4,300 rpm
Max. Speed*1	187 km/h*2, *3 186 km/h*2, *4 185 km/h*5
Spark Plugs	NGK DILZKAR7C11H

*1: GCC country
*2: Models with 17 inch wheel
*3: Models without side curtain airbags
*4: Models with side curtain airbags
*5: Models with 18 inch wheel

Fuel

Type	**Indonesian models** Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher **Except Indonesian, Pakistani, and Taiwanese models** Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher **Taiwanese models** Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher **Pakistani models** EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

Battery

Capacity	27AH(5)/30AH(20)*1 36AH(5)/47AH(20)*2 36AH(5)/45AH(20)*3

*1: Except Singaporean, Australian, Fijian, and Taiwanese models
*2: Singaporean, Australian, and Fijian models
*3: Taiwanese models

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Front Fog Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W Amber (WY21W)* LED*
Back-Up Light(s)	16 W (W16W)* LED*
Rear Fog Light*	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front Map Lights	LED
Ceiling Light*	LED
Rear Map Lights*	LED
Ambient Light	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2.3 W
Centre Pocket Lights	LED
Luggage Area Lights	LED

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)*1 HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)*2
Charge Quantity	395 - 445 g*1 345 - 395 g*2

*1: Except Singaporean, Australian, and Fijian models
*2: Singaporean, Australian, and Fijian models

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	2.8 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	• Honda Engine Oil #1.0 • Honda Green Oil • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30 • API service SN or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.1 L
	Change including filter	3.3 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.79 L*1 3.90 L*2 4.04 L*3 (change including the remaining 0.45 L in the reserve tank)

*1: Indonesian and Malaysian models
*2: African models with right-hand drive type, Latin American models with right-hand drive type, Bruneian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Pakistani, Australian, Fijian, and Singaporean models
*3: Latin American models with left-hand drive type, African models with left-hand drive type, New Caledonia, Filipino, Cambodian, Laotian, Vietnamese, Taiwanese, and Middle Eastern models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Tyre

Regular	Size*1	215/60R16 95H 215/60R17 96H 225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*2	Size	T135/90D17 104M
	Pressure kPa (bar) psi	420 (4.2) 60
Spare*3 (Full-size tyre)	Size*1	215/60R17 96H 225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 7J*4 17 x 7J*5 18 x 7 1/2J*6
	Compact Spare*2	17 x 4T
	Full-size spare*3	17 x 7J*5 18 x 7 1/2J*6

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.
*2: Models with compact spare tyre
*3: Models with full-size spare tyre
*4: Models with 16 inch wheel
*5: Models with 17 inch wheel
*6: Models with 18 inch wheel

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Australian and Fijian models

Length		4,345 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Singaporean models

Length		4,355 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,580 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm
	Rear	1,550 mm

African models with right-hand drive type

Length		4,361 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Latin American models with right-hand drive type

Length		4,361 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,548 mm
	Rear	1,553 mm

Latin American models with left-hand drive type and New Caledonia models

Length		4,347 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Filipino models

Length		4,347 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,548 mm*1 1,537 mm*2
	Rear	1,553 mm*1 1,543 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Cambodian, Laotian, and Vietnamese models

Length		4,347 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm
	Rear	1,550 mm

Bruneian, Bangladeshi, and Sri Lankan models

Length		4,347 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,605 mm*1 2,606 mm*2
Track	Front	1,552 mm*1 1,542 mm*2
	Rear	1,553 mm*1 1,543 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Indonesian models

Length		4,347 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Middle Eastern models

Length		4,398 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Malaysian models

Length		4,347 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Taiwanese models

Length		4,345 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,580 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm
	Rear	1,550 mm

African models with left-hand drive type

Length		4,398 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Pakistani models

Length		4,361 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,548 mm
	Rear	1,553 mm

Continued

Models with turbocharger

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V	
Curb Weight	1,370 - 1,394 kg	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,830 kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	1,030 kg
	Rear	865 kg

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm	
Displacement	1,498 cm^3	
Compression Ratio	10.3 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILKAR8P8SY

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

■ Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)/60AH(20)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)		LED
Headlights (High Beam)		LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights		LED
Front Fog Lights		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)		LED
Brake Lights		LED
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21 W Amber (WY21W)
Back-Up Lights		16 W (W16W)
Rear Licence Plate Light		LED
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Interior Lights		
	Front Map Lights	LED
	Ceiling Light	LED
	Ambient Light	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights*	LED
	Centre Pocket Lights	LED
	Luggage Area Lights	LED

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	415 - 465 g

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	3.5 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 • API service SN or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.2 L
	Change including filter	3.5 L

* Not available on all models

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	5.48 L (change including the remaining 0.64 L in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size*1	215/60R17 96H 225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare	Size	T135/90D17 104M
	Pressure kPa (bar) psi	420 (4.2) 60
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7J*2 18 x 7 1/2J*3
	Compact Spare	17 x 4T

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.
*2: Models with 17 inch wheel
*3: Models with 18 inch wheel

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Vehicle Dimensions

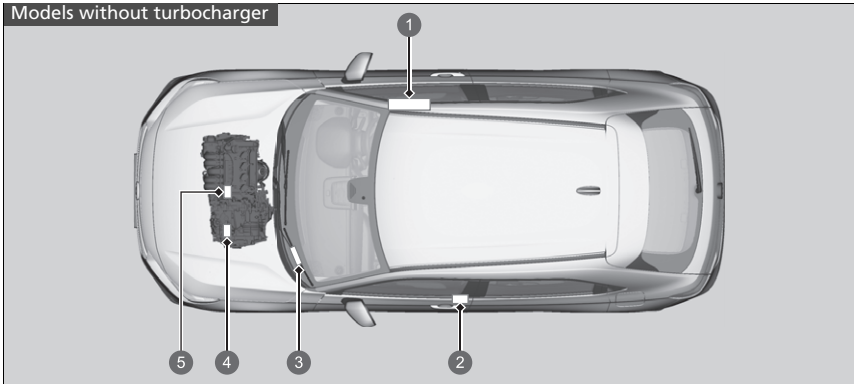
Length		4,385 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, and transmission number are shown as follows.

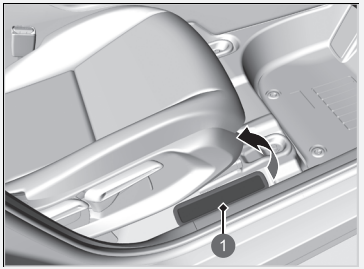
Models without turbocharger



1. Vehicle Identification Number
2. Certification Label*/Certification Plate*/Vehicle Identification Number*/Engine Number*/Chassis Number*
3. Vehicle Identification Number*
4. Continuously Variable Transmission Number
5. Engine Number

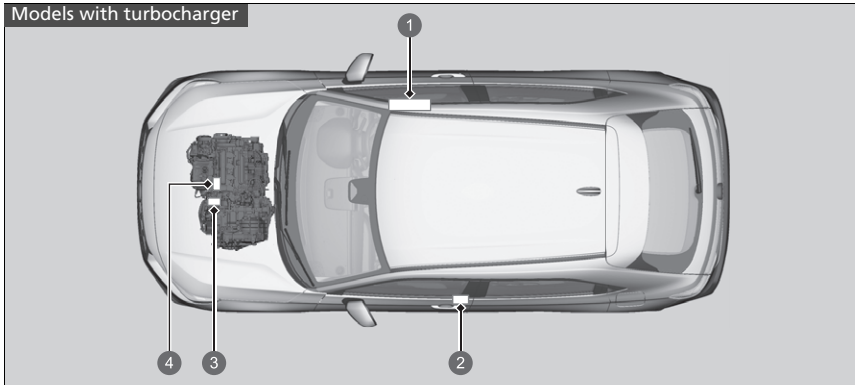
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



1. Cover

* Not available on all models



❶ Vehicle Identification Number
❷ Certification Plate/Vehicle Identification Number
❸ Continuously Variable Transmission Number
❹ Engine Number

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Models under the FCC regulations

Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

AS required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

Taiwanese models

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

* Not available on all models

	Keyless Access System	
	BCM	FOB
Botswanan models	BOCRA BOCRA/TA/2020/5766	BOCRA BOCRA/TA/2020/5502
Jamaican models	This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – “41580430” on the product	This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – “TP_4” on the product
Nigerian models	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission
Filipino models	No.ESD-RCE-2023291 NTC Type Accepted	No.ESD-RCE-2022596C NTC Type Accepted
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440
Indonesian models	—	The web-address of QR Code is: *https://sertifikasi.postel.go.id/valid?section=4f94ec92c3a7c44073065befddad1b22S3r107620S3r07b0b99ff69237359f67408f220423ba*

Continued

	Keyless Access System	
	BCM	FOB
U.A.E. models	TRA REGISTERED No: ER88345/20 DEALER No: DA36975/14	TRA REGISTERED No: ER81325/20 DEALER No: DA36975/14
Vietnamese models	110926001 HONDA NAVDANH ICT	110926001 HONDA NAVDANH ICT
Zambian models	ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/7/127	ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/6/39

Bermuda, Curacao, Grand Cayman, New Caledonia, and Sint Maarten models

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
http://continental-homologation.com/honda	*http://continental-homologation.com/honda*
CE	CE
Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *https://continental-homologation.com/honda* Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 125KHz Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium	Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *https://continental-homologation.com/honda* Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

Continued

	Telematics Control Unit*	Wireless Charger*
U.A.E. models	—	TDRA ER13750/22 United Arab Emirates
Vietnamese models	HONGVAN VN0002011 ICT	—
Bahamas models	—	BH EVS Co.,Ltd. WC500HOCI21 This information is a product serial number of each module. FCC ID: 2A6WXWC500HOTL20
Botswanan models	—	BOCRA REGISTERED No : BOCRA/TA/2022/7515
New Caledonia models	—	Hereby, BH EVS Co.,Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type WC500HOCI21 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *http://bhevs.co.kr/bbs/board.php?tbl=e_bbs42_2* Intended use: Wireless Power Charger for vehicle Postal address: Am Kronberger Hang 2 65824 Schwalbach am Taunus Germany Manufacturer name: BH EVS Co.,Ltd. Frequency band: 111kHz Maximum transmitted output: 42dBuA/m @10m

* Not available on all models

Emergency Call (eCall)	
U.A.E. models	TRA ER73675/19 0019826/09

Environmental Protection Regulation

Taiwanese models

NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.

* Not available on all models

■ **TCU Open Source Licence**

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

* Not available on all models

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 410, 414

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 527
Accessories and Modifications 616
Accessory Power Sockets 273
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 465
Indicator (Amber) 119
Indicator (White/Green) 119
Adaptive Driving Beam 235
Adding
Coolant 573
Engine Oil 572
Washer 581
Additives, Engine Oil 568
Adjusting
Armrest 261
Front Seats 250
Head Restraints Positions 258
Headlights 231
Mirrors 245
Steering Wheel 244
Adjusting the Sound 309
Agile Handling Assist 424
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 280
Air Outlet 286
Changing the Mode 282
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 283
Dust and Pollen Filter 606
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 282
Sensor 287
Synchronization Mode 285
Using Automatic Climate Control 280
Air Outlet 286
Air Pressure 688, 691
Airbags 57
After a Collision 59
Airbag Care 68
Event Data Recorder 1
Front Airbags (SRS) 59
Indicator 66, 112
Sensors 57
Side Airbags 62
Side Curtain Airbags 64
AM/FM Radio 316
Anchorage Points 56
Android Auto™ 342
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 527
Indicator 112
Apple CarPlay 335
Armrest 261
Audio 134
Audio Remote Controls 296
Audio System 290
Adjusting the Sound 309
AM/FM Radio 316
Android Auto™ 342
App Shortcut Function 299
Apple CarPlay 335
Audio Remote Controls 296
Audio System Function 293
Audio/Information Screen 298
Basic Operation 293
Bluetooth® Audio 331
Clock Setup 306
DAB 321
Display Setup 310
Error Messages 379
FLAC/PCM/WAVE/MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV 327
General Information 380
How to Update 311
How to Update Wirelessly 314
How to Update with a USB Device 315
iPod 324
Limitations for Manual Operation 305
MP3/WMA/AAC 327
Radio Data System (RDS) 319
Selecting an Audio Source 304
Start Up 292
Status Area 304
System Updates 311
System Updates Settings 312
USB Flash Drives 327, 380
USB Ports 291, 295
Wallpaper Setup 307
Wi-Fi Connection 334
Audio/Information Screen 298

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 199
Auto High-Beam 232
Auto High-Beam/Adaptive Driving Beam Indicator 114
Automatic Brake Hold 523
Indicator 110, 523
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function 248
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 240
Average Fuel Economy 132, 152
Average Speed 134, 154

B

Battery 599
Charging System Indicator 111, 662
If the Battery Is Dead 655
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt Battery) 599
Belts (Seat) 43
Beverage Holders 266
Bluetooth® Audio 331
Booster Seats (For Children) 101
Brake Light Display 137
Brake System 519
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 527
Automatic Brake Hold 523
Brake Assist System 528
Fluid 579
Foot Brake 522
Indicator 108, 109, 110, 664, 666
Parking Brake 519
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 243
Bulb Replacement 582
Active Cornering Lights 582
Back-Up Lights 585, 586
Brake Lights 583, 586
Daytime Running Lights 582
Front Fog Lights 582
Front Turn Signal Lights 582
Headlights 582
High-Mount Brake Light 586
Position Lights 582
Rear Fog Light 585, 586
Rear Licence Plate Light 586
Rear Turn Signal Lights 583, 586
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 582
Taillights 583, 586
Vanity Mirror Lights 587
Bulb Specifications 687, 690

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 103
Carrying Luggage 393, 395
Certification Label 692
Changing Bulbs 582
Charging System Indicator 111, 662
Child Restraint System 69
Booster Seats 101
Child Restraint System for Infants 73
Child Restraint System for Small Children 74
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 96
Larger Children 100
Rear-facing Child Restraint System 73
Selecting a Child Restraint System 75
Using a Tether 98
Child Safety 69
Childproof Door Locks 198
Childproof Door Locks 198
Cleaning the Exterior 613
Cleaning the Interior 609
Climate Control System 280
Air Outlet 286
Changing the Mode 280
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 283
Dust and Pollen Filter 606
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 282
Sensors 287
Synchronization Mode 285
Using Automatic Climate Control 280
Clock 127, 176
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 436
Coat Hooks 267
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 436
Indicator (Amber) 120
Compact Spare Tyre 622
Console Box 265

Continuously Variable Transmission
Operating the Shift Lever 24, 25, 409, 413
Shifting 408, 412
Controls 175
Coolant (Engine)
Overheating 659
Creeping 407
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist 127
Customize Display 139, 156
Customized Features 346, 353

D

DAB 321
Daytime Running Lights 228
Dead Battery 655
Defaulting All the Settings 359
Deflation Warning System 428
Calibration 429
Indicator 117, 667
Initialisation 429
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 283
Demister 242
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 694
Dimming
Headlights 222
Rearview Mirror 245
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 570
Display Audio 292
Display Setup 310
Door Mirrors 246
Doors 180
Auto Door Locking 199
Auto Door Unlocking 199
Door and Tailgate Open Message 42
Keys 180
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 195
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 183
Lockout Prevention System 193
Drive Mode Switch 417
Driver Information Interface
Switching the Display 128, 149
Driver Information Interface (Models with A-type meter) 128
Driver Information Interface (Models with B-type meter) 149
Driving 391
Braking 519
Shifting Gear 408, 412
Shifting Position 408, 412
Transmission 407
Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle 405
Dust and Pollen Filter 606

E

eCall (Emergency Call) 680
ECON Mode 416, 419
Elapsed Time 134, 154
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator 113, 665
Emergency Call (eCall) 680
Emergency Stop Signal 529
Emergency Towing 677
Engine
If the Battery Is Dead 655
Number 692
Oil 568
Switch Buzzer 220, 221
Engine Coolant 573
Adding to the Reserve Tank 574
Overheating 659
Engine Oil 568
Adding 572
Checking 570
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 662
Recommended Engine Oil 568, 687, 690
ENGINE START/STOP Button 219
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 113, 665
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 103
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 613
Exterior Mirrors 246

F

Features 289
Filter
  Dust and Pollen 606
Flat Tyre 622
Fluids
  Brake 579
  Engine Coolant 573
  Windscreen Washer 581
FM/AM Radio 316
Fog Light Indicator 115
Folding Down the Rear Seats 253
Foot Brake 522
Front Airbags (SRS) 59
Front Seats 249
  Adjusting 250
Front Wide View Camera 516
Fuel 27, 540
  Economy and CO_2 Emissions 544
  Gauge 125
  Instant Fuel Economy 132, 152
  Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) 112
  Range 132, 152
  Recommendation 27, 540
  Refueling 27, 540
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 544
Fuel Fill Cap 27, 542
Fuel Fill Door 27, 542
Fuses 669
  Inspecting and Changing 676
  Locations 669, 671, 673, 675

G

Gauges 125
Glass (care) 610, 614
Glove Box 265

H

Hands-Free Telephone System 360
  Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls 370
  Automatic Transferring 371
  Favourite Contacts 372
  HFT Buttons 360
  HFT Menus 364
  HFT Status Display 362
  Limitations for Manual Operation 363
  Making a Call 375
  Options During a Call 378
  Phone Settings Screen 366
  Phone Setup 367
  Receiving a Call 377
  Ringtone 371
Hazard Warning Button 6, 7
Head Restraints Positions 258
Headlights 222
  Adaptive Driving Beam 235
  Adjuster 231
  Aiming 582
  Auto High-Beam 232
  Dimming 222
  Operating 222
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) 360
High-Beam Indicator 114
Hill Descent Control System 420
Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green) 117
Hill Start Assist System 404
Honda SENSING 28, 433

I

Identification Numbers 692
  Engine and Transmission 692
  Vehicle Identification 692
Illumination Control 243
Immobilizer System 212
  Indicator 115
Indicators 106
  ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 112
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 119, 465
  Auto High-Beam/ Adaptive Driving Beam 114
  Automatic Brake Hold 110, 524
  Automatic Brake Hold System 110, 523
  Charging System 111, 662
  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 120
  ECON Mode 116
  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 113, 665
  Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 662

Front Fog Light 115
High-Beam 114
Hill Descent Control System (White/Green) 117
Immobilizer System 115
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 119, 120
Lights On 114
Low Fuel 112
Low Temperature 117
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System 117, 667
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator 116, 668
M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift 111
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 110, 663
NORMAL Mode 116
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 110, 666
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 108, 664, 666
Parking Sensor 118
Rear Fog Light 115
Road Departure Mitigation 121, 122
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF 121
Safety Support (Amber) 122
Safety Support (Green/Grey) 124
Seat Belt Reminder 45, 112
Security System Alarm 115
Shift Position 111
Speed Alarm 114
SPORT Mode 116
Supplemental Restraint System 66, 112
System Message Indicator 118
Transmission System 111
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 114
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 113, 423
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 113, 422
Information 139, 156, 685
Instant Fuel Economy 132, 152
Instrument Panel 105
Brightness Control 243
Interior Convenience Items 262
Interior Lights 262
Interior Rearview Mirror 245
iPhone 380
iPod 324, 380
IR Cut Glass 610

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 627, 649
Jacking Points 626, 646, 648
Jump Starting 655

K

Key Number Tag 181
Keyless Lockout Prevention 193
Keys 180
Lockout Prevention 193
Number Tag 181
Rear Door Won't Open 198
Remote Transmitter 190
Types and Functions 180
Kickdown 407

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 485
Indicator (Amber) 119
Indicator (White/Green) 120
Lead Car Departure Notification System 506
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto 384
Lights 222, 582
Active Cornering Lights 229
Adaptive Driving Beam 235
Bulb Replacement 582
Daytime Running Lights 228
Fog Light 226
Front Fog Lights 226
High-Beam Indicator Light 114
Interior 262
Light Switches 222
Lights On Indicator 114
Luggage Area Lights 264
Position Lights 222

Load Limits 395
Locking/Unlocking 180
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 199
Childproof Door Locks 198
From Inside 195
From Outside 183
Keys 180
Using a Key 192
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 183
Lockout Prevention System 193
Low Battery Charge 662
Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) 112
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 182
Low Speed Braking Control 450
Low Temperature Indicator 117
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator 117, 667
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator 116, 668
Lower Anchorages 92
Lubricant Specifications Chart 687, 690
Luggage (Load Limit) 395
Luggage Area Cover 270
Luggage Hook 268

M

Maintenance 137, 547
Battery 599
Brake Fluid 579
Cleaning 609
Climate Control 605
Engine Coolant 573
Oil 570
Precautions 548
Radiator 576
Remote Transmitter 603
Replacing Light Bulbs 582
Safety 549
Transmission Fluid 578
Tyres 593
Under the Bonnet 564
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 110, 663
Map Light Switches 263
Maximum Permissible Weight 395, 686, 690
Mirrors 245
Adjusting 245
Door 246
Interior Rearview 245
Modifications (and Accessories) 616
MP3/WMA/AAC 327
Multi-View Rear Camera 538

N

Navigation 135
NORMAL Mode
Indicator 116
Numbers (Identification) 692

O

Odometer 126
Off-road Guidelines 397
Oil (Engine) 568
Adding 572
Checking 570
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 662
Oil Monitor System 551
Recommended Engine Oil 568, 687, 690
Viscosity 568
Open Source Licence 701
Open Source Licences 383
Opening/Closing
Bonnet 566
Power Windows 215
Tailgate 200
Other Interior Convenience Items 272
Outside Temperature Display 126
Overheating 659

P

Paddle Shifters (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) 410, 414
Parking Brake 519
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 110, 666
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 108, 664, 666
Parking Sensor System 532
Passing Indicators 222

Petrol 27, 540
Economy and CO_2 Emissions 544
Gauge 125
Information 540
Instant Fuel Economy 132, 152
Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) 112
Recommendation 27, 540
Refueling 27, 540
Phone 134
Playing *Bluetooth®* Audio 331
Position Lights 222
Power Windows 215
Precautions While Driving 405
Rain 406
Pregnant Women 54
Puncture (Tyre) 622

R

Radiator 576
Radio (AM/FM) 316
Radio Data System (RDS) 319
Range 132, 152
Range / Fuel / Trip Meter 131, 151
RDS (Radio Data System) 319
Rear Demister 242
Rear Seat Reminder 256
Rear Seats 253
Rearview Mirror 245
Refuel Recommend 390
Refueling 27, 540
Fuel Gauge 125
Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) 112
Petrol 27, 540, 686, 690
Regulations 694, 700
Remote Transmitter 190
Replacement
Bulbs 582
Front Wiper Blade Rubber 588
Fuses 669, 671, 673, 675
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 591
Tyres 622
Resetting a Trip Meter 132, 152
Reverse Tilt Door Mirror 247
Road Departure Mitigation 456
Indicator (Amber) 121
On and Off 460

S

Safe Driving 37
Safety Labels 104
Safety Message 0
Safety Support 138, 155
Indicator (Amber) 122, 123
Indicator (Green/Grey) 124
Seat Belts 43, 137, 154
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage 51
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 48
Checking 55
Fastening 49
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt 96
Pregnant Women 54
Reminder 45
Warning Indicator 45, 112
Seats 249
Adjusting 249
Front Seats 249
Rear Seats 253
Security System 212
Immobilizer System Indicator 115
Security System Alarm Indicator 115
Select Lever 24, 408, 412
Selecting a Child Restraint System 75
Selecting the Desired Air Outlet 286
Setting the Clock 176
Settings 140, 157
Shift Lever 24, 408, 412
Operation 24, 409, 413
Releasing 658
Won't Move 658
Shift Position Indicator 111, 409, 413
Shifting (Transmission) 24, 408, 412
Shoulder Anchorage 51
Side Airbags 62
Side Curtain Airbags 64
Sonar Sensors 518
Spare Tyre 622
Spark Plugs 686, 690
Specifications 686
Specified Fuel 27, 540, 686, 690

Speed Alarm 136
Speed Alarm Indicator 114
Speed/Time/Trip Meter 133, 153
Speedometer 125
SPORT Mode
Indicator 116
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 59
Starting the Engine 399
Does Not Start 650
If the Battery Is Dead 655
Steering Wheel 244
Adjusting 244
Stopping 530
Storage Items 265
Sun Visor 272
Super UV Cut Glass 610
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 59
Switches
(Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 7, 8, 219
Switching the Display 128, 149
System Updates 311

T

Tachometer 125, 130
Tailgate 200
Temperature
Outside Temperature Display 126
Temperature Sensor 126
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 632
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 632
Tie-down Anchorages 268
Time (Setting) 176
Tools 620
Towing a Trailer 396
Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency 677
Traffic Jam Assist 497
Traffic Sign Recognition System 127, 511
Transmission 407, 408, 412
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 410, 414
Creeping 407
Fluid 578
Kickdown 407
Number 692
Shift Lever Does Not Move 658
Shift Position Indicator 111, 409, 413
Trip Meter 132, 134, 152, 154
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 632
Troubleshooting 619
Blown Fuse 669, 671, 673, 675
Brake Pedal Vibrates 32
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 33, 34
Emergency Towing 677
Engine Won't Start 650
Noise When Braking 34, 35
Overheating 659
Puncture/Flat Tyre 622
Rear Door Won't Open 198
Shift Lever Won't Move 658
Warning Indicators 106
Turbo Engine Vehicle 545
Turn signals
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 114
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System
(TPMS) 425
Calibration 425
Indicator 116, 668
Tyres 593
Air Pressure 688, 691
Checking and Maintaining 593
Inspection 593
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 622
Rotation 596
Spare Tyre 622
Tyre Chains 598
Wear Indicators 594
Winter 598

U

Unlocking the Doors 183
USB Flash Drives 327, 380
USB Ports 291, 295
Utility Compliance 700

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Numbers 692
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 422
OFF Button 423
OFF Indicator 113

System Indicator 113
Viscosity (Oil)..... 568, 687, 690
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)..... 422

W

Wallpaper..... 307
Warning Indicator On/Blinking..... 662
Warning Labels 104
Watts 687, 690
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 594
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle).... 627, 649
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate..... 678
Wi-Fi Connection 334
Window Washers..... 239
Adding/Refilling Fluid..... 581
Switch 239
Windows (Opening and Closing)..... 215
Windscreen 239
Cleaning..... 610, 614
Defrosting/Defogging 242, 283
Washer Fluid..... 581
Wiper Blades 588
Wipers and Washers..... 239
Winter Tyres..... 598
Tyre Chains..... 598
Wipers and Washers..... 239
Automatic Intermittent Wipers..... 240
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 588
Front 239
Rear..... 241
Wireless Charger 274
WMA 327
Worn Tyres..... 593